



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
University of Toronto

CA1
Z 1
-74M21

(2)

Government
Publication

MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE INQUIRY

IN THE MATTER OF AN APPLICATION BY CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS PIPELINE LIMITED FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT
BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE YUKON
TERRITORY AND THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES FOR THE
PURPOSE OF THE PROPOSED MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE

and

IN THE MATTER OF THE SOCIAL, ENVIRONMENTAL AND
ECONOMIC IMPACT REGIONALLY OF THE CONSTRUCTION,
OPERATION AND SUBSEQUENT ABANDONMENT OF THE ABOVE
PROPOSED PIPELINE

(Before the Honourable Mr. Justice Berger, Commissioner)

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

April 8, 1975.

PROCEEDINGS AT INQUIRY

VOLUME XXV

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

APR 11 1975

LIBRARY

APPEARANCES:

Mr. Ian G. Scott, Q.C.
Mr. Stephen T. Goudge,
Mr. Alick Ryder and
Mr. Ian Roland for Mackenzie Valley
Pipeline Inquiry;

Mr. Pierre Genest, Q.C.
Mr. Jack Marshall,
Mr. Darryl Carter and
Mr. John Steeves for Canadian Arctic Gas
Pipeline Limited;

Mr. Reginald Gibbs, Q.C.
Mr. Alan Hollingworth for Foothills Pipelines
Ltd.;

Mr. Russell Anthony, and
Prof. Alastair Lucas for Canadian Arctic
Resources Committee;

Mr. Glen W. Bell and
Mr. Gerry Sutton For Northwest Territories
Indian Brotherhood and
Metis Association of the
Northwest Territories;

Miss Lesley Lane for Inuit Tapirisat of
Canada and
The Committee for Original
Peoples' Entitlement;

Mr. Ron Veale and
Mr. Allen Lueck, for Council for Yukon Indians

Mr. Carson H. Templeton, for Environmental Pro-
tection Board;

Mr. David Reesor, for Northwest Territories
Association of Muni-
cipalities;

Mr. Murray Sigler, for Northwest Territories
Chamber of Commerce.

347
M835
Vol. XXV

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

APR 11 1975

LIBRARY

I N D E X

EXHIBITS:

<u>No.</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Page No.</u>
87	Drill Hole Data for Pipeline Routing in Yukon and N.W.T., incorporating East Fort Simpson Amendment and Cross-Delta Alternative	2948
88	Brief Summary of Environmental Concerns and Route Changes arising from April 9-13	2950
89	GeoTechnical Considerations Relative to route changes made following April 9-13 meetings	2950
90	Additional Changes in Routing to Avoid conflicts with Mackenzie Highway or to Improve Compressor Station Locations	2950
91	Alignment Sheets showing Route Changes	2964
92	Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division, Proceedings of The American Society of Civil Engineers, The Terzaghi Lecture	3018
93	Observations on the Right-of-Way of the Pointed Mountain Gas Pipeline by E.B. Owen and D.W. Van Eyk	3018
94	Dr. Hollingshead's Report	3042

1 Yellowknife, N.W.T.

2 April 8, 1975.

3 (PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

4 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Genest has
5 something that he'd like to deal with first, Mr.
6 Commissioner.

7 MR. GENEST: In the last
8 session a number of undertakings to provide informa-
9 tion were given by me, and I thought it might be a
10 convenient time to do some tidying up.

11 I have given copies of these
12 documents to the Commission secretary, and I believe
13 some copies have been placed on your desk, sir. The
14 first matter was a sheet entitled:

15 "Drill Hole Data for Pipeline Routing In
16 Yukon and Northwest Territories, incorporating
17 the East Fort Simpson amendment and cross-delta
18 alternative."

19 That was requested by Mr. Scott, and I suggest the
20 best way to deal with it is perhaps--its in tabular
21 form, if we could just mark it as an exhibit, if that
22 is satisfactory.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: Certainly.

24 (DRILL HOLE DATA FOR PIPELINE ROUTING IN YUKON
25 & NORTHWEST TERRITORIES, INCORPORATING EAST FORT
26 SIMPSON AMENDMENT & CROSS-DELTA ALTERNATIVE MARKED
27 EXHIBIT 87)

28 MR. GENEST: Then we were
29 asked to, I believe by you at page 2744 of the trans-
30 cript, as to whether there was a report as to a

1 reconnaissance of the Pointed Mountain line, and we
2 were asked to look up our list of documents. We have
3 done so. It is item 104 on our list of documents. We
4 have it available. Mr. Bell was interested in the
5 subject matter, and I have advised Mr. Bell that he
6 can look at the report in our library up here.

7 The next matter, sir, is a
8 little more extensive, and it arises out of questions
9 asked by you at page 2723 of the transcript, and perhaps
10 to introduce it properly I should just read the
11 exchange that took place, it is found in Volume 23 on
12 March 21st, and Mr. Clark was testifying and you
13 said, sir, and I quote:

14 "I take it at the moment you are not really
15 able to give me any specific instances where
16 the route was moved owing to the necessity of
17 avoiding an environmentally sensitive area?"

18 The answer was:

19 "I can think of a couple of examples, and
20 they've already been discussed, of pretty
21 large movements, but the alignment sheet work,
22 for instance the give and take, I can't recall
23 those from memory, I can recall it happening
24 and I can undertake to look at records that
25 are available."

26 And you then said, sir:

27 "Yes, I think I would appreciate it if you
28 would because you and your colleagues will be
29 back again in April."

30 And Dr. Clark has obtained the necessary information

1 and I thought if it was convenient I would get him
2 to deal with that matter now. He has brought the
3 alignment sheets and I have again placed with the
4 Commission secretary some three documents, the first
5 entitled:

6 "A Brief Summary of Environmental Concerns
7 and Route Changes arising from April 9-13th
8 Meetings."

9 A second sheet headed:

10 "Geotechnical Considerations relative to
11 route changes made following the April 9-13
12 Meetings,"

13 and the third sheet entitled:

14 "Additional changes in routing made to
15 avoid conflicts with Mackenzie Highway or
16 to improve compressor station locations."

17 (BRIEF SUMMARY OF ENVIRONMENTAL CONCERNS &
18 ENGINEERING RESPONSES & ROUTE CHANGES ARISING
19 FROM APRIL 9-13 MEETINGS, MARKED EXHIBIT 88)

20 (GEOTECHNICAL CONSIDERATIONS RELATIVE TO
21 ROUTE CHANGES MADE FOLLOWING APRIL 9-13
22 MEETINGS MARKED EXHIBIT 89)

23 (ADDITIONAL CHANGES IN ROUTING TO AVOID CONFLICTS
24 WITH MACKENZIE HIGHWAY OR TO IMPROVE COMPRESSOR
25 STATION LOCATIONS MARKED EXHIBIT 90)

26 JOHN IVOR CLARK,
27 GARRY WOOD HOLLINGSHEAD,
28 EDWARD CHARLES McROBERTS,
29 WILLIAM ALEXANDER SLUSARCHUK,
30 NORMAN REUBEN MORGENSTERN,
RICHARD H. COOPER,
R.H. HARDY,
GUY LESLIE WILLIAMS, resumed:

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams

1
2 MR. GENEST:

3 If I could ask Dr. Clark
4 to deal with these now briefly so as to make them
5 intelligible?

6 WITNESS CLARK: These alignment
7 sheets that I have here, Mr. Commissioner, which ^{I will} turn
8 over to Mr. Genest, are copies of the alignment sheets
9 that were sent to the environmental consultants prior
10 to the April review in 1973. We have marked on these in
11 red --

12 THE COMMISSIONER: Prior to the big meeting?

13 A Yes sir.

14 Q Between your engineering
15 people and your environmental people?

16 A Yes, that was the April
17 9th to 13th meeting, and we marked on these in red
18 the changes that were made. Now, when these were
19 sent out and while they were reviewing them, to suggest
20 changes that they might see appropriate, we were also
21 continuing with our own review. However, no changes
22 were made until the meeting, and following the
23 April 13th meeting there were a total of 31 changes
24 on these sheets that were considered. 13 of these
25 were at the direct suggestion of the environmental
26 people involved. The remainder were those changes that
27 our geotechnical people had suggested on the basis of
28 terrain. Generally related ^{to} terrain stability, and they
29 were then discussed, the changes were made, and the
30 13 that were suggested by the environmental group, six

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams

1 changes were made, and of the other seven it was
2 either not technically feasible to make the change or
3 that further study of that particular concern had put the
4 concern to rest.

5 Now about the same time or
6 shortly after, before the alignment sheets that were filed
7 were completed, we also made a further five changes
8 with respect to the proposed Mackenzie Highway to
9 avoid conflicts, and these were incorporated and also
10 marked in red here, so that the red lines on this
11 particular document coincide with the alignment sheets
12 that are filed, and have been examined here as an
13 exhibit.

14 MR. GENEST: I'm sorry, Dr. Clark,
15 the red on the alignment sheets that was added shows
16 the change that took place.

17 A Shows the change that
18 took place.

19 Q Right, and can we get
20 our paper work in order, Dr. Clark, permit me --

21 A Yes, the first piece
22 that you have mentioned is the list that was drawn up
23 by Mr. Watson following the April 9th to 13th
24 meeting. Now, this list is a brief summary of what
25 took place and why it took place.

26 The second document --

27 THE COMMISSIONER: I wonder
28 just while we're at it, could the list be marked?
29 Does that make sense, Mr. Genest?

30 MR. GENEST: Yes, I'd like

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper.
Hardy, Williams

1 to tender it, sir.

2 A The second one, sir, at
3 least what I'm calling the second one, sir, is the
4 geotechnical considerations relative to those particular
5 changes.

6 THE COMMISSIONER: That will
7 be marked, too?

8 MR. GENEST: Right.

9
10
11
12 MR. GENEST: What will be
13 the number of the first one?

14 THE SECRETARY: 87.

15 MR. GENEST: 87.

16 MR. SCOTT: Just so that I
17 have them in order, has the first bore hole sheet
18 been marked?

19 MR. GENEST: That's 87. So
20 the first sheet entitled:

21 "The following is a brief summary of the
22 environmental concerns etc."
23 would be Exhibit 88.

24 The next sheet entitled
25 "Geotechnical considerations,"
26 and so on is 89.

27 And what is the next sheet?

28 WITNESS CLARK: What I'm
29 calling the third one is the additional changes in
30 routing made to avoid conflicts with Mackenzie Highway

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams

1
2 or to improve compressor stations location --

3 MR. GENEST: I think that's
4 90.

5 A And either appended to
6 that, if you wish, or as a separate one is the
7 geotechnical considerations of those five changes,
8 and I'd suggest that that be appended to that sheet.

9 MR. GENEST: Well, mine is
10 separate. I think everybody's is separate.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: Let's call
12 it 90-A.

13 MR. GENEST: Right.

14 (GEOTECHNICAL CONSIDERATIONS OF ADDITIONAL CHANGES
15 MARKED EXHIBIT 90-A)

16 THE COMMISSIONER: So we
17 know it relates to 90.

18 MR. GENEST: All right.
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

1
2 WITNESS CLARK: Unless you
3 wish, sir, I didn't propose to read all of these into
4 the evidence. I think I could draw attention to give
5 examples to a few here. One would be a geotechnical
6 change that occurred at that period which is shown on
7 sheet 1-C-0200-1003. This is in the vicinity of the
8 Malcolm River.

9 Q That would be on the
10 first, item 3 on Exhibit 88?

11 A Item 3, I picked a
12 number at random here, for example.

13 Now this was a-- there were
14 two changes made on this sheet.

15 MR. SCOTT: What page is this
16 on?

17 MR. GENEST: The front page
18 of Exhibit 88 and it's also referred to at the top
19 of page 2 of Exhibit 89. Have I got this straight?
20 Exhibit 89 is the geotechnical considerations.

21 A It would have the same
22 number, it would be --

23 Q Yes, item 3 there,
24 sheet 1-C-0200-1003.

25 A Correct.

26 Q Right.

27 A There were two changes.
28 The first was made to avoid a poor gully crossing.
29 The length of line affected by the change was 3.3
30 miles. It added about 100 feet to that length. The

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Hardy, Williams
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper

1
2 terrain in that area was such that we move upstream,
3 reduced our slope angles and provided an incidental
4 improvement on the other minor drainage ways. It added
5 one side bend and the general construction conditions
6 were basically unchanged.

7 The second change on that
8 sheet covered a length of line of approximately 8.5
9 miles. It added about 800 feet to that length, and it
10 was made to avoid slumping ice wedge polygons on the
11 bank of the Malcolm River. Hence there was a reduction
12 in the potential buoyancy and stability problems.

13 That was, as I mentioned, one
14 of the changes that was recommended and accepted by
15 the geotechnical people who were continuing route
16 refinement during that period.

17 Now an example of a change
18 to satisfy an environmental concern, ^{is} what I have
19 listed here is No. 12 on sheet 1-D-0200-1006.

20 Q That's on the third
21 page of Exhibit 88?

22 A Yes. Now this is an
23 area east of Old Crow where it was pointed out that
24 the lakes west of the Driftwood River were very good
25 for waterfowl, and the recommendation of the environ-
26 mental consultants was to move the line north. The
27 line was moved in accordance with the recommendations.
28 The re-routing increased the length through that area
29 by 0.7 miles, almost three-quarters of a mile. The
30 terrain was similar but the new location had generally

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

1

2

Q What number is that, sir?

3

A That is No. 13.

4

Q 13.

5

A We examined that sugges-

6

tion and found that it was unacceptable geotechnically.

7

The proposal would place the line in an area of very

8

high buoyancy and some thermal erosion, with a much

9

less favorable river crossing. We felt in that in-

10

stance that the first crossing chosen was the prefer-

11

able one.

12

Q Sir, why did they want

13

to move the line two miles north of Berry Creek?

14

A The concern was with the

15

crossing, this was noted in the minutes of the envir-

16

onmental meeting, the notes we had read, it's a fairly

17

high use area for migrating caribou, moose, fur-bearers

18

and sometimes beaver. We felt that further study

19

relative to the terrain where we were crossing as

20

compared to the suggested area would cause less

21

environmental impact and this was suggested to them

22

at that second meeting.

23

Now another example of a

24

fairly major move is No. 19, sheet 1-A-0200-1003, and

25

1004. This is the Holmes Creek area just south of

26

Swimming Point. It was suggested that we move

27

further from Holmes Creek, and again we were parallell-

28

ing the creek on ground that was of somewhat higher

29

relief and gave us the shortest line through the

30

Swimming Point crossing. There was concern that

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

1
2 that was an area of high fur-bearer productivity and
3 that we should move back from the creek. So for a
4 distance of about nine miles the line was re-located,
5 from Milepost 25 to 34. Lateral movements up to
6 three-quarters of a mile were made to avoid parallelling
7 the creek too closely. This added about 6/10ths of a
8 mile to the length throughout there. The terrain
9 types that are crossed are similar at both locations,
10 but the old location, the first one we have chosen
11 was the best topography that gave the most direct
12 route to the Swimming Point crossing.

13 The new route was less favor-
14 able with respect to the significant increase in poten-
15 tial buoyancy problems. The construction requirements
16 would be similar for both locations, but the new loca-
17 tion would require more weighting.
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Now another example is 23,
2 the environmental comment was relative to sheet
3 1(b) 0200-1011. And their concern was with the
4 existence of rafter nests in that area on the particular
5 river that appears on that alignment sheet. In order
6 to assess this concern our environmental manager
7 checked the area with Mr. Richard Fyfe, of the Canadian
8 Wildlife Service, and we were advised that our route
9 was at least four miles up from the closest rafter
10 nest site and that this was therefore no need to change
11 it to avoid a conflict.

12 What I have listed is number
13 30 on sheet 1(b) 0200-1039. The enviromental
14 consultants had pointed out that the pipeline route
15 was passing very close to a lake which is important.
16 And they preferred that the route stay at least 400
17 yards from that lake. We were able to re-locate it
18 approimately a 1000 feet to the west, but if we had
19 moved it further it would have put it in conflct
20 with the Mackenzie Highway so there was another
21 physical constraint. Subsequent discussions they
22 considered this an adequate move. It changed terrain
23 somewhat, but the length was not significantly
24 changed. A slight increase, something of the order
25 of a 100 feet, I believe.

26 Now, on the five other changes,
27 that are listed as made to avoid routing conflicts.
28 For instance --

29 MR. GENEST: This is on
30 Exhibit 90?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

A Yes.

Number 1 there, on Sheet
1(b)-0200-1014. This is an area near Good Hope. We
located to the west to avoid a possible conflict with
the highway. There was no significant change in line
length. It added two more bends to deal with. The
terrain types were similar, but the peat crossed was a
somewhat greater length at the new location and the
construction would be similar, except that more weighting
would be required there.

Well, these five then go on to
describe either a move. Number 2 relates to the
Mackenzie Highway, Number 3 an area where the line was
moved to improve a compressor station location. And
the reason that they are listed here is because they
are all made about the same time, and they are all
shown on this set of alignment sheets which you may
want to include with your filing.

That's all that I was going
to cite as examples, but all of the changes shown here
are listed with a summary of the reasons and geotechnical
considerations.

MR. GENEST: Sir, would it
meet with your approval if I filed/ ^{this} stack of alignment
sheets which shows actually the detail of the work?

MR. SCOTT: I take it, Mr. Genest,
that on the alignment sheets the new route or the
change is in red, is that correct?

MR. GENEST: That's correct.
And the old route is in black.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

THE COMMISSIONER: Excellent.

MR. ANTHONY: Mr. Commissioner,
may I also direct a question on that regard? The
gentleman's name escapes me for the moment, but he was
with Mr. Williams on the first panel.

MR. GENEST: Mr. Watson?

MR. ANTHONY: Yes, that's
correct, Mr. Watson, who had early alignment sheets
that were also presented at this meeting, showing the
location of the highway. The alignment sheets that
are now going to be exhibits, do they also include the
information he had about the highway location for that
environmental meeting in April?

MR. SCOTT: I think Mr.
Commissioner if I can interrupt my friend, the real
concern is that Mr. Watson, or Dr. Watson, I forget
his title, indicated that he would file the alignment
sheets that were presented to the environmentalists.
Now it may be that exhibit 91 is in fact, Exhibit 91
if you take off the red lines, is in fact the alignment
sheets that were sent to the environmentalists.

WITNESS CLARK: These are the same
reproductions of the alignment sheets that were
presented to the environmentalists.

MR. ANTHONY: These alignment
sheets that you have there that are Exhibit 91 also
include the highway on it, do they?

WITNESS WILLIAMS: This/^{set}does
not include the highway, but the ones that were filed

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

1 as the Exhibit do show the highway location.

2 MR. ANTHONY: You mean the
3 actual application alignment sheets?

4 A Yes, right.

5 MR. ANTHONY: I'm sorry, perhaps
6 I'm mistaken. I understood from Mr. Watson's evidence
7 that there was an alignment sheet showing the highway
8 location as they understood it, prior to this, at the
9 same time as this alignment sheet showing the proposed
10 route. And that this may be, the highway shown on
11 those sheets may be somewhat different than the
12 highway as shown on the final application.

13 A I'm sure you're right,
14 and at the meeting we had a working set of alignment
15 sheets similar to these with the highway marked on
16 in probably red or blue pencil or something. Just for
17 our own reference at the meeting. I don't know if
18 those are still available or not. This is the only
19 set we were able to find of the alignment sheets are
20 set at that meeting, because we've modified them to
21 make the alignment sheets for the application. The
22 line that was shown in the April meeting was eradicated
23 from the originals. This is just a set of prints that
24 we've were able to find in the archives that was used
25 at that meeting.

26 Now, I'm not sure that we
27 can find that set, that working set, that does have the
28 highway location as we knew it at that time.

29 MR. ANTHONY: Well, Mr.
30 Commissioner, I believe I have Mr. Watson's statement

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

1 and I can go back to the transcript, saying that he
2 does have those sheets, and I thought we had undertaken
3 that those sheets would be provided.

4 MR. GENEST: Well let me check
5 that Mr. Anthony.

6 THE COMMISSIONER: You can find
7 that reference Mr. Anthony and show it to Mr. Genest
8 and Mr. Scott and let's see what Mr. Genest says about
9 it.

10 (ALIGNMENT SHEETS MARKED EXHIBIT 91)

11 MR. GENEST: Sir, that leaves
12 me with a further enquiry by you in connection with the
13 Fort Simpson route changes. Mr. Williams, Dr. Clark
14 was not heavily involved in that aspect of the matter.
15 Mr. Williams is waiting for some dates, and I've spoken
16 to Mr. Scott and I think we can give you a better
17 picture of that tomorrow morning. And that sir, concludes
18 what I had today.

19 THE COMMISSIONER: Thank you.

20 CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. SCOTT:

21 Dr. Cooper, I'd like to turn
22 to one matter you raised, and that is the question of
23 the measurement of scour due to major ice-jams, and
24 the work you've done in connection with that. And I
25 take it just so we'll be clear, that that is the problem
26 that was identified as unsolved in the Blench Associates
27 report of July, 1974. Is that correct?

28 WITNESS COOPER: A Yes, in
29 that particular report we identified it as not having
30 come up with a number if you like. We had done a lot

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

of work at that time to --

Q Yes, I think the word
utilized in that report, and in the Northern Engineering
Services report on Ice Conditions of August, 1974, was
in fact unsolved, wasn't it?

A That's correct.

Q Yes, and I take it that
what you have told us last time was that as a result
of the analytical work underway for one to two years
in which you've been in charge, finished only a month
ago, that problem can now be regarded as solved?

A It can be regarded as
solved in that the work was directed at arriving at a
estimate, a very conservative estimate of the maximum
scour that could develop.

Q And I take it that the
at one stage that you regarded the problem as unsolved
because you were unable to predict with any assurance
at that time, the outside limit of the scour?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 WITNESS COOPER: No, I wouldn't
3 say that we were unable to predict. We had not carried
4 the analysis through at that point in time to obtain
5 the predication.

6 Q All right, well let me
7 put it this way. Would it be correct to say that
8 you regarded the problem as unsolved because your
9 analysis was insufficiently developed to predict the
10 depth of scour with assurance.

11 A That's fair to say.

12 Q And I take it that you
13 now feel confident that you can predict the depth of
14 scour as a result of ice jams with confidence.

15 A Yes, we do.

16 Q Yes, and would it be
17 -- and I take it that this problem is one that will
18 be relevant at a number of major crossings.

19 A By "a number" I believe
20 it to be relevant at the Mackenzie River crossing
21 at Point Separation to the greatest extent. The
22 checks or the analysis would also be carried out on
23 the Mackenzie River crossing upstream of Simpson,
24 although the conditions there are such that the problem
25 should exist to the same extent.

26 Q How about the Peel
27 River?

28 A The Peel River by its
29 nature during breakup, we feel, is not an ice-jamming
30 hazard, or the same hazard for a jam to develop does

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 not exist there.

3 Q I take it that the soil
4 bottom of the Peel River is one that is susceptible to
5 scour at the crossing point.

6 A Yes, it is, to the point
7 where bedrock is reached, and of course bedrock is
8 shallow on one side.

9 Q Yes, well then why do
10 you say that this isn't a problem that is likely
11 to confront you at the crossing of the Peel River?

12 A Because the hazard for
13 jamming is not the same as it is on the Mackenzie.
14 What happens is when the Peel River breaks up we
15 normally have very high backwater from the Mackenzie
16 Delta, and the breakup is quite orderly as opposed to
17 the Mackenzie.

18 Q Well now, the solution
19 to the problem has led you, as I understand it, to
20 be able to say to the Commission that you can predict
21 with some assurance the depth of scour due to ice
22 jams.

23 A We can predict with some
24 assurance the maximum conceivable scour. I'm not in
25 complete agreement that this is the best prediction.
26 I think it's highly over-conservative.

27 Q Right, but that seems
28 to me at the moment to be all to the good. You can
29 predict the maximum level depth of scour.

30 A Yes.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q And the obvious importance
3 of that is that you want to know that so that you can
4 determine the depth at which the pipe has to be buried
5 below that river.

6 A That's correct.

7 Q And that not only for
8 integrity of pipe reasons, but for environmental
9 reasons as well.

10 A Yes, and for a third
11 reason, what are the problems of constructability.

12 Q Yes. Well now, I take it
13 that the analytical work that you have done really is
14 an analysis that has produced a hypothesis.

15 A I'm not sure that I
16 understand what you mean by the analysis producing a
17 hypothesis.

18 Q Well, let me put it this
19 way, and it may be simplistic and you'll tell me if
20 it is, but I take it that a skilled and experienced
21 engineer can sit in his laboratory or in his armchair
22 and develop a thesis, and that is one of the things
23 that you have done in approaching this problem.

24 A Well, in approaching
25 the problem we have come up with -- we've developed an
26 analytical model that involves a number of elements
27 that generally are established theories either in open
28 water flow analysis or I'm sorry, open channel flow
29 analysis, sediment transport, and ice jam mechanics.

30 Q Yes, but am I right that

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 in looking at this analytical model what you have done
3 is you have applied some theories to it and developed
4 a thesis?

5 A In a sense that's correct.

6 Q Yes, and you'd agree with
7 me that the accuracy of the thesis has never been
8 tested on the ground.

9 A The accuracy of the com-
10 bined model has never been tested on the ground, that's
11 true. The elements of it, in many cases, have.

12 Q But to carry it to its
13 logical conclusion, the depth of scour has never been
14 measured at any major river crossing.

15 A For the events we are
16 predicting scour, that's true. However, I should
17 point out that the inputs to the analysis are -- the
18 combination of inputs are more severe than to our
19 knowledge has occurred and has been observed so that
20 even if we could measure scour with this combination
21 of inputs, it hasn't been done.

22 Q Well, I take it that
23 what you have is you have some information as to the
24 measurement of scour in open water locations.

25 A Yes, that's correct.

26 Q Yes, and in addition to
27 that you have a conceptual model, an analytical model
28 that you look at, and then you have one year of
29 observing the water of the Mackenzie and other rivers.

30 A Of observing the water?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1

2

Q Of observing the ice jams.

3

A We've had two years of

4

that.

5

Q Two years of that, but

6

to be perfectly clear, I take it that neither you nor

7

indeed anybody else has ever been able to measure the

8

scour depth at or near an ice jam.

9

A A severe ice jam, that's

10

correct.

11

Q And isn't it so that

12

the model you have utilized to develop your prediction

13

is really in its nature two-dimensional?

14

A That's correct.

15

Q Yes, it shows a cut of

16

the river and you work how the currents work and the

17

pressure of the ice in the water and so on.

18

A Yes.

19

Q In that cut.

20

A Yes, that's correct.

21

Q Well, isn't it so that

22

in the nature of ice jams they are three-dimensional

23

and that is that there is a width of ice as well that

24

may have -- I don't say does, but may have -- important

25

consequences in terms of scour depth.

26

A Yes, and of course we're

27

accounting for this in our application of the modelling

28

results. What we are doing is we're taking the

29

results of the two-dimensional model, as you put it,

30

and we're saying that this at this time should be

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 measured down, not from the average bed elevation but
3 from the deepest or the lowest bed elevation.

4 Q When you say "measured
5 down" do you mean rendered more conservative?

6 A Well, there have been
7 findings that would indicate that as scour develops
8 beneath the ice jam, the entire ice jam, that the
9 section, the cross-section would become more uniform.
10 Now if this is true, then there would be some justifica-
11 tion, some argument for measuring this from an average,
12 predicted scour from an average bed elevation, We,
13 however, feel that more information is required to
14 justify this move and we're recommending that they
15 measure it from the lowest bed elevation.

16 Q Well, isn't it again
17 fair to say that that is a conceptual hypothesis that
18 hasn't been tested anywhere?

19 A Yes. Well, what is
20 a conceptual hypothesis?

21 Q Well, it's a rationaliza-
22 tion made by you of anticipated events.

23 A It would certainly be
24 to some extent a rationalization if I recommended we
25 measure it from the average bed level, but I think we're
26 being highly conservative.

27 Q I understand that you
28 think you're being conservative, and I take it the
29 reason you emphasize how conservative you're being is
30 because at least as far as scour from ice jams is

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 concerned the whole issue is hypothetical in the
3 extreme, and that's why you have to be so totally
4 conservative.

5 A Again I'm not clear on
6 your use of the word "hypothetical".

7 Q Well, let me come at it
8 this way. You have told us that in open water scour
9 cases, you measure the potential for scour depth by
10 applying a factor that may vary from 1.5, if you're
11 being liberal, to 4 if you're being conservative.

12 A It varies within that
13 range. It varies because of the conditions at the
14 particular river.

15 Q All right. What I'm say-
16 ing to you is this, isn't it so that open water scour
17 is a relatively well-understood problem?

18 A It's certainly more
19 understood than the ice jam.

20 Q And it's not only under-
21 stood in theory but there have been measurements made
22 of scour holes in open water which will test and help
23 you develop the factors.

24 A That's what the factors
25 are by and large based on.

26 Q Yes, so that in open
27 scour even with that ability to test the depth of the
28 scour you still have to produce a wide range of
29 factors to cover every eventuality, 1.5 to 4.

30 A That's correct, yes.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Well now I put it to you
3 that if, knowing as much as you do about open water
4 scour, and bearing in mind the variety of range of
5 factors that you need to cover all the water scour
6 holes that are possible and that have been measured,
7 isn't it very risky at this date to say, "We can
8 predict the maximum scour depth under ice jams," when
9 no measurements have been taken?

10 A Well, if you'll let me
11 draw the analogy between the prediction that we're
12 discussing and the open water scour conditions, my
13 biggest concern is that where we have factors between
14 1.5 and 4 in the open water case, and if we were to
15 express the ice scour case in terms of a factor, I feel
16 that the one we've got would be up around 5 or 6 in
17 that it is probably not a good design, it's too con-
18 servative. But based on our information we have to
19 go --

20 Q Yes, but I take it you're
21 going to 5 or 6, is that what you're saying, under ice
22 jams?

23 A That's -- well, no, we're
24 not using the factor, I just wanted to draw that
25 analogy.

26 Q All right, but even if
27 you did how would you know that that would be adequate?

28 A It's a matter of having
29 confidence in the elements of our analysis and the level
30 of conservatism.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Well to revert to yester-
3 day's question, aren't you really therefore taking a
4 risk that the scour depth under ice jams never measured
5 will not exceed the depth that you predict?

6 A I'd rather express it
7 in degree of conservatism, which I suppose is the
8 opposite to risk. I guess I can discuss it in terms
9 of risk, though, and I think in coming up with this
10 prediction we are taking a very, very minimal risk.
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Well now, let me come to
3 one other matter, suspended crossings. I take it that
4 the only crossing on the Mackenzie River that's ever
5 been made has been made by telephone lines.

6 A No, I understand there
7 were some pipelines on the canal system that crossed
8 the Mackenzie or a part of it.

9 Q When you say "a part" do
10 you mean a tributary?

11 A It may have been just
12 across to an island, I'm not certain. I'd have to
13 check the records on that.

14 Q And a report made to
15 Northern Engineering by Lamb McManus has asserted that
16 overhead crossings of the Mackenzie are feasible.
17 You're aware of that report, aren't you?

18 A I haven't read it, no.

19 Q And I take it that --
20 WITNESS HARDY: I know the
21 report.

22 Q Is that correct, Dr.
23 Hardy?

24 A I initiated that study, that
25 is correct.

26 Q Yes, and I take it, Dr.
27 Cooper, that your own report on twinning the rivers
28 listed overhead crossings as an alternative in one
29 location.

30 WITNESS COOPER : My own report, sir?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 crossing, I think, on this pipeline as a viable alter-
3 native. Do you recall which that was?

4 A that's part of this pipe-
5 line.

6 Q I see, well what is it
7 again? I mean --

8 A It's the Elk River in
9 South-Eastern B.C.

10 Q So would it be fair to
11 say that we stand in this position, that we heard what
12 has been said about rivers, we have one consultant's
13 report that says that they are -- that overhead cross-
14 ings are viable, that's the Lamb Report. We have you
15 in one case recommending an overhead crossing as an
16 alternative.

17 A No sir, I don't think we
18 recommended it as an alternative, but in any event --

19 Q Well, let me just read what
20 you say:

21 "The alternatives include stability analyses,
22 monitoring of slope movements, minor re-location ,
23 and in one case an overhead crossing."

24 A All right, I stand
25 corrected, it is an alternative.

26 Q Yes. I'm not saying it
27 was your first choice, I'm simply saying that you regar-
28 ded it as a viable approach to the problem.

29 A That is a possibility, sir,
30 yes.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q And I understand from what
3 we heard yesterday that although he seems unable to
4 persuade his clients, Dr. Hardy as well regards it as
5 a viable alternative, is that so, doctor?

6 WITNESS HARDY: Yes. I should
7 add, Mr. Scott, that the Lamb McManus Report was pre-
8 pared by their structural engineers, and when they
9 say it's possible to build overhead crossings, they
10 do that, they say that from a structural point of
11 view. They are not taking into consideration any of
12 these other factors that I pointed out yesterday, that
13 are objections.

14 Q No, but Dr. Hardy, I
15 understood you to say yesterday that you yourself fav-
16 ored overhead crossings, though you had some difficulty
17 for reasons of economics and maintenance, of persuading
18 your clients. Is that a correct account of what you
19 said?

20 A In this particular
21 case it's a viable solution to many crossings from the
22 structural point of view, and from other considerations
23 that I have in mind that go somewhat beyond the Lamb
24 McManus Report. In the case of the Elk River, you see,
25 this was in consultation with them on other pipelines
26 I had recommended an overhead crossing for other pipe-
27 lines. They were never built.

28 Q Well, let me put this
29 proposition --

30 A They were submarine

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 crossings.

3 Q Let me put this proposi-
4 tion to Dr. Cooper. I take it, it would be fair to
5 say that while it may create some other problems, such
6 as maintenance and cost, an overhead crossing will re-
7 move a number of the environmental concerns that are
8 associated with burying a pipeline under the bed of
9 the river.

10 WITNESS COOPER: If we're
11 talking about the crossing where ice jam related
12 scour is a prime consideration --

13 Q Well, let's talk about
14 overhead crossings generally first. Am I not correct
15 in saying that if you have an overhead crossing you
16 don't have any of the problems or the dimension of the
17 problems of digging in the river and moving the bed
18 and all the rest of it?

19 A That's correct, only where
20 the overhead crossing does not require a support,
21 pier or piers in the river.

22 Q All right. But if there
23 is no pier required in the river, it removes a substan-
24 tial number of the environmental concerns that are
25 -- that relate to digging in the river and burying a
26 pipe.

27 A well of course, if they
28 span the entire river I would have no input into it.

29 Q Well, that would be a
30 disadvantage, and I take it also that with respect to

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 scour under ice jams it removes -- an overhead
3 crossing removes the necessity of depending on your
4 recent calculations.

5 A I believe on the rivers
6 that we're crossing with overhead crossings, that you
7 would require probably two piers in the river and
8 the problems may be greater.

9 Q Yes. The problems,
10 however, would be different, wouldn't they, because
11 you would just have one or two piers?

12 A We are still dealing
13 with the scour, the piers would tend to increase the
14 scour and we're dealing with ice loading.

15 Q Have you done any work
16 on scour on piers as a result of ice jams?.

17 A Not as a result of ice
18 jams, no.

19 WITNESS HARDY: There has been
20 work done, though, on smaller rivers in Alberta, Mr.
21 Scott.

22 Q But just so we'll be
23 clear, Dr. Hardy, and I want to be sure I have you
24 correctly, at page 2819 yesterday when speaking of
25 overhead crossings, you said,

26 "I like them myself, you see, but I have lost
27 every argument with my pipeline friends when I
28 have suggested, 'Well, here is a place maybe
29 you should be talking about an overhead crossing.'
30 Is that your view?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A That's exactly what I
3 said.

4 Q All right, that's fine,
5 I just wanted to have it --

6 A Remember, sir, that I'm
7 an old broken-down structural man, the same as Dr.
8 Cooper likes to play around with rivers, I liked to
9 play around in structures years ago.

10 Q Well, all right, thank
11 you very much. We have that clear. I just wanted to be
12 sure that that was an accurate account of your evidence.
13 Now, Dr. Cooper, can I come to another problem and that
14 relates to the existence of deep holes in the major
15 delta channels, and I take it that you are aware of
16 the phenomena that I think I am talking about?

17 WITNESS COOPER: I believe so,
18 yes.

19 Q And this is an important
20 question, is it not, particularly in view of the cross-
21 delta proposal?

22 A Yes, I think it is.

23 Q And isn't it correct to
24 say, Dr. Cooper, that you have taken -- or your people
25 have taken -- extensive soundings in the major river
26 channels of the delta?

27 A We have taken considerable,
28 we have done a considerable amount of sounding work in
29 the vicinity of the crossings that are being proposed.

30 Q Yes, and I take it that

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 in the course of that sounding work you found very
3 deep holes in some of those channels.

4 A By and large the deep
5 holes that we found could be explainable in terms of
6 open water hydraulics. There were a number of them
7 at locations that we're not crossing, I should point out,
8 that are anomalous admittedly in terms of normal open
9 water hydraulics.

10 Q How deep would some of
11 them be? What was the deepest you found?

12 A I believe the deepest we
13 found was in the order of 100 feet.

14 Q Yes.

15 A In that order, I could
16 be --

17 Q Yes, what is the depth of
18 the channel in the delta?

19 A Well, of course this
20 varies considerably.

21 Q What's the average depth?

22 A It varies considerably
23 from a matter of ten feet in some of the very broad ones
24 to an average depth of say 60 feet in some of the
25 channels.

26 Q Now I put it to you that
27 those holes cannot be explained on the basis of any
28 existing knowledge of channel hydraulics.

29 A Some of the holes are at
30 locations that are difficult to explain. There have been

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 hypotheses put forward that would indicate that their
3 development could have been through a process of
4 thermal degradation and that the flow situation is such
5 that it will prevent their infilling. However, I should
6 point out that the locations were crossing we have
7 found no evidence of such holes, or we found no evi-
8 dence in that type of location.

9 Q I understand that, doctor
10 or you wouldn't be crossing. It would be foolhardy to
11 cross in the face of one of those holes, wouldn't it?

12 A Not necessarily.

13 Q Well, it would be risky.

14 A If we're -- if we could
15 demonstrate that we were in, before final design, that
16 we were in a depositional environment it may well be
17 the best place to cross.

18 Q Well, let me ask you this.
19 Would you agree with me that many of those holes are
20 of unknown origin?

21 A I would agree that there
22 are questions about their origin.

23 Q Yes, and none of those
24 questions have been resolved except by -- and I don't
25 say this disrespectfully -- except by armchair hypothe-
26 sizing.

27 A The origin of the holes
28 has not -- of some of them, of the few anomalous holes,
29 has not been conclusively demonstrated.

30 Q And indeed you've reported

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 to that or Dr. Hollingshead has in a report called:

3 "Preliminary design of six major river crossings
4 north of the 60th Parallel of Northern Engineering
5 Services,"

6 dated August of 1974, where you say in Chapter 4,
7 paragraph 1-A:

8 "The reach of the east channel from Swimming
9 Point north has been extensively sounded and
10 exhibits a number of deep local scour holes of
11 unknown origin."

12 A From Swimming Point north,
13 that is?

14 Q Yes.

15 A Yes.

16 Q Well, that's true, isn't
17 it?

18 A There is evidence of
19 a sequence of deep holes in essentially the middle of
20 the channel from Swimming Point north to the Beaufort
21 Sea.

22 Q And I take it that if
23 I were to suggest to you that nothing really is known
24 about the origin of these holes, except by hypothesis,
25 you wouldn't disagree with that.

26 A The origin of the ones
27 downstream, I would have to agree with you, yes.

28 Q Yes, and if I were to
29 suggest to you -- and perhaps it's in the report --
30 that nothing was really known about their life, that

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 is whether they got deeper or filled in, except as a
3 matter of hypothesis, you wouldn't disagree with that.

4 A At this point in time,
5 no, but I should point out that we are now undertaking
6 studies in the field to gain the information so that we
7 can prove that.

8 Q And if I would suggest --
9 and perhaps you've beaten me to it by already suggesting
10 it -- that these holes could be the result of the
11 melting of ground ice below the channel, you wouldn't
12 be in a position to either assert that or deny it with
13 any certainty. It's just another hypothesis, isn't it?

14 A Yes, thats correct.

15 Q But if that hypothesis
16 were correct, that is that these holes were caused by
17 the melting of ground ice, wouldn't it be extremely
18 difficult to construct buried river crossings in
19 the delta where those holes are, or where they develop?

20 A No, definitely not. All
21 we would have to do is demonstrate in the course of
22 obtaining data for developing final designs that the
23 ground ice did not exist where we were crossing.

24 Q Well, let me ask you this,
25 referring to what we were saying yesterday, in suggest-
26 ing a crossing of the delta, at whatever location,
27 bearing in mind how little is known about these holes,
28 aren't you taking a calculated risk in the absence of
29 precise knowledge? I'm not criticizing it, I'm just
30 asking it.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A Well I believe there have
3 been some drill holes made. I think --

4 Q Well, aren't you taking
5 a calculated risk of some proportion?
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Examination by Scott

1
2 A Not with the knowledge
3 of what the ice conditions are, and we have got holes
4 in there, to some extent.

5 Q Well, there aren't any
6 drill holes up there? Where are the drill holes in
7 the Cross Delta Route?

8 WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: A Yes,
9 there have been some test holes made along the Cross
10 Delta alternative.

11 Q Are they shown on the
12 alignment sheets that were provided to us? Would they
13 have been shown if they had been done?

14 WITNESS WILLIAMS: A The drill
15 holes within the window of the mosaic that were done in
16 the Delta are shown on the alignment sheets that were
17 filed. In addition to those holes there were some
18 deeper holes drilled at locations, at a previous route
19 location that we had that do not fall on the window of
20 the mosaics, but I'm sure the results of those deep
21 holes are in some of the reports that have been
22 recently filed.

23 Q How deep are the bore
24 holes that are shown at the Delta river crossings? And
25 how many approximately are there?

26 A Generally they were 20
27 feet deep, 10 to 20 feet deep. But the deep ones that
28 I'm speaking of to try to test this hypothesis of
29 thermal degradation of insitu ice, were in the
30 neighbourhood of 200 feet deep.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Examination by Scott

1
2 Q Yes, but those are the
3 ones that aren't shown on your alignment sheets?

4 A That is correct.

5 Q Yes, and I take it that
6 those were done because Dr. McKay said that ground ice
7 could be found in those locations at a depth of 150 Feet.
8 Isn't that so? Isn't that why you went off and did
9 this work, because he'd said that those bore holes aren't
10 deep enough for a Delta crossing?

11 A Well, I don't recall
12 particular input from Dr. McKay, but certainly we went
13 in to test to see if there was massive ice adjacent
14 to these deep holes.

15 Q Well, how many holes have
16 been done at a depth exceeding 100 feet on the Cross
17 Delta route?

18 WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: A I
19 think there are three or four such holes and those are
20 the test data from those holes are available in a report
21 which has been filed.

22 Q How long is the Cross
23 Delta route of which you are speaking?

24 A Which part of it?

25 Q At the Delta.

26 A It's about 35 miles of
27 twin line there.

28 Q Yes. Well now, Dr. Cooper
29 bearing in mind those facts, are you able to say with
30 absolute assurance that the crossing that you have

1
2 described is, with that knowledge, secure?

3 WITNESS COOPER: A The Cross
4 Delta crossings?

5 Q Yes.

6 A I would have to say for
7 some of the Cross Delta channels that we would need
8 some additional data before aproving the final designs
9 on it.

10 Q Wouldn't it be fair to
11 say Dr. Cooper that in this case, you have the
12 hypothesis again, isn't that fair?

13 A Yes, basically that's
14 correct.

15 Q But isn't there an
16 additional factor that in this case you haven't even,
17 and I don't say this critically, but the knowledge has
18 not yet been able to give you a hypothesis for the
19 origin of these holes?

20 A Well no, we certainly do
21 have an hypothesis for the origin of those holes.

22 Q Well, what's your
23 hypothesis?

24 A Well, I have two if you
25 like.

26 Q Well, you can have two,
27 but it seems to me that it becomes then quite hypothetical.
28 Tell us what your two are?

29 A That they could be
30 due to degradation of ice lenses or permafrost. Or that

1
2 it could be due to some of the reversing flow that we
3 get in some of these channels.

4 Q And wouldn't you agree
5 with me that it is much, much too early to say what
6 they cause of them is?

7 A What the--

8 Q Hole? If you've got two
9 hypotheses, I take it you haven't selected between
10 them yet?

11 A Well, let me make an
12 illustration, or again a comparison. I don't judge
13 the status of those designs as being that much different
14 to say the status of a design of one of the rivers,
15 one of the more conventional rivers, where we do not
16 have final design data.

17 Q But do you concur in
18 Dr. Clark's conclusion with respect to the Cross Delta
19 route, you have all the tools that you need to solve
20 the problem with assurance?

21 A I believe we have all the
22 tools, yes.

23 Q And by tools, you mean you
24 have the analytical techniques?

25 A That's correct.--

26 Q Untested on the ground?

27 A -- but they require some
28 data to - -

29 Q Yes. Now, let me come
30 to one other matter, and that is gouging of the channel

1
2 by ice cakes. And I take it that this is a phenomenon
3 that has been observed that when an ice cake is unended
4 and proceeds down the river?

5 A Yes, it can be upended
6 and literally moved down the river, partially being
7 floated by the flow, and partially rolling on the bed.

8 Q Yes, and isn't it true
9 that in the Beaufort Sea where of course there are
10 bigger ice cakes, substantially bigger perhaps, the
11 scouring resulting has been as deep as 30 feet?

12 A I couldn't answer that.

13 Q Would that surprise you?

14 A Again, I don't have any
15 data on it. I would have to see the data.

16 Q And I take it that Mr.
17 Nuttall of your firm has reported that the ice cakes
18 on the Mackenzie River could gouge the river bed and
19 endanger any buried pipeline, if it's not buried
20 deep enough?

21 A I would like you to read
22 those words. I don't know whether he said 'endanger'
23 or not.

24 Q No, he didn't, you are
25 quite right. He says this, " in several instances
26 sizeable ice flows were observed to be upended and
27 rolling along a sheer line such that their corners
28 undoubtedly came in contact with the bed. At no
29 time during the field observation program was it
30 possible to directly observe the magnitude of bed

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 goudging resulting from this process." Would you
3 agree with that?

4 A Yes, I would.

5 Q Yes, and I take it there-
6 fore that with respect to ice cakes upended, we have
7 no information as to the depth of scour?

8 A We have no--

9 Q At least from Mr. Nuttall.

10 A -- just a minute. We
11 have no direct observation of the depth of scour.
12 However, we have on the basis of that report presented
13 data to Northern Engineering Services of the, what we
14 considered to be the largest cake that could roll on
15 the bed. They have estimated from geotechnical
16 considerations how much scouring could take place. I
17 should also like to point out that the rolling of these
18 cakes along the bed, normally occurs along the shear
19 lines during breakup. Now these are near the banks,
20 they are not out in the middle of the river.
21 They are definitely not out in the deepest portion of
22 the river, because the cakes just wouldn't reach the
23 bed there.

24 Where this goudging takes place
25 we're going to have much more cover by a considerable
26 degree than, cover over top of the pipe, than
27 goudging could ever expose, so --

28 Q Well, how do you know
29 that? Let me ask you this. You say that you presented
30 data to Northern Engineering that disclosed how deep

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 the goudging would be?

3 A Well Dr. Hollingshead
4 can talk about that.

5 Q Yes, well let me just
6 ask you first. He can add to it. I take it when you
7 say you presented data, you presented again in fact a
8 hypothesis. There was no measurement of any of this?

9 A A hypothesis based on
10 field observations of the largest ice cakes that were
11 observed to be rolling.

12 Q Yes, but you didn't
13 measure any of the goudge marks?

14 A Not, we didn't make any
15 direct measurements of goudging, no. Not in the river
16 bed, on the banks, yes.

17 Q You measured the sizes
18 of the ice cakes?

19 A That's correct.

20 Q Now, Dr. Hollingshead,
21 did you want to add something?

22 WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: A I
23 was just going to say that if you took the largest
24 potential ice cake, as was suggested by Mr. Nuttall and
25 combine that with say the worst bed condition, loose
26 sand, we did some preliminary calculations which
27 indicated that you would have/possibly something in the order
28 of 7 to 8 feet of penetration .

29 Q Well Dr. Cooper, or Dr.
30 Hollingshead, isn't it clear that this phenomenon has

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 never really been reported in the literature?

3 WITNESS COOPER: A In the
4 published literature I suspect not, but it is reported
5 in the literature that you are referring to.

6 Q Well, yes, it's reported
7 by Mr. Nuttall, who doesn't go on to say this, but in
8 terms of the published literature apart from Arctic
9 Gas and Northern Engineering, it's not a matter that's
10 ever been dealt with?

11 A No, I suspect it will be
12 in the not too distant future.

13 Q Again, you are the first.
14 You are the pioneers. But let me put this to you. I
15 take it that it very probably is a phenomenon that is
16 associated with the Mackenzie and very few other rivers?

17 A I believe that it would
18 be fair to state that the Mackenzie would be a severe
19 case. It would definitely be associated with other
20 rivers, such as the Peace or the Athabasca.

21 Q Yes. Well now, I put it
22 to you again that you find yourself with a hypothesis
23 that is untested by/^{any}field work that involves measurement
24 of results?

25 A Pure measurement of
26 results, you're basically correct here. However, I
27 should point out that there is a level of confidence
28 implicit in the lack of observation of the results
29 when we do river surveys. In other words, we do not
30 come out with, shall we say scour holes, or very narrow

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 holes that could be attributable to this. This
3 indicates that it is not a severe problem, although
4 it doesn't conclusively demonstrate it.

5 Q Well let me ask you this.
6 Would it lead you to re-evaluate your position and
7 perhaps adopt a more conservative hypothesis still, if
8 if were shown to your satisfaction that there were
9 scour marks in the Beaufort Sea that were in excess of
10 30 feet deep? Would that have any bearing as far as
11 you are concerned?

12 A We must keep in mind, of
13 course, the ice strength and the ice forces in the
14 Bering Sea are much greater.

15 Q Yes. What I'm basically
16 asking --

17 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
18 what sea are we in at the moment? Did you say,
19 Bering Sea?

20 A I'm sorry, I meant
21 Beaufort.

22 MR. SCOTT: We're both adrift
23 in one sea or the other.

24 Q Would that worry you or
25 cause you to re-evaluate your hypothesis?

26 A Not really, in that in
27 light of the findings we have made and the observations
28 we have made, we could take probably three or four times
29 that amount of gouging if you like, and it would still
30 not be of concern with the crossings that we are

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 proposing. We are going to have that much cover where
3 it can occur.

4 WITNESS MORGENSTERN: Could I
5 ~~comment~~ here, Mr Scott. I have had some contact with the
6 Beaufort Sea problem as a consultant on design of
7 off-shore drilling structures against the ice in that
8 area. The mechanics of that process differ very
9 greatly from the mechanics of the ice gouge process
10 that you are addressing here. The energetics of the,
11 the phenomenon that are driving the ice differ. The
12 strength of the ice differs very greatly as Dr. Cooper
13 pointed out, and it's a relatively straightforward
14 calculation to demonstrate that the amount of gouge
15 that can develop under river actions is much less than
16 the depth of burial that we are talking about.

17 I think that the allusion to
18 the mechanics of Beaufort Sea gouging is a very
19 different animal.

20 Q Well, I take it that we
21 are agreed then, that even if that fact were
22 demonstrated, it isn't something Dr. Cooper that would
23 worry you?

24 WITNESS COOPER: A No, we
25 look on the gouging of the river bed as being a
26 factor that doesn't go deep enough to govern the
27 designs. The other considerations such as open water
28 scour and ice-jamming scour are much more prominent.

29 Q Well, isn't this together
30 with deep holes, another problematical area in which

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 overhead crossings can at least remove that problem?
3 Overhead crossing in which there are no piers in the
4 river?

5 A Well, as I have stated
6 we don't consider it to be a problem.

7 Q All right. I take it
8 that, Dr. Morgenstern you would perhaps know, that the
9 goudging in the Beaufort Sea has in fact been determined
10 by field observation? Is that correct?

11 WITNESS MORGENSTERN: A Yes,
12 there have been observations of scour marks.

13 Q Yes, it's been measured
14 in essence. Dr. Cooper, why isn't it possible to give
15 some assurance to your hypothesis by doing that here
16 in the Mackenzie?

17 WITNESS COOPER: A Well, I
18 should point out that subsequent to break-up, we have
19 gone in and made rather extensive measurements in the
20 reach upstream of Point Separation. Some extensive
21 bed soundings and again I would like to indicate that
22 we have found no evidence of any significant scour that
23 could be attributed to this cause.
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q I thought you told me --
3 and I may have misunderstood -- that you hadn't done
4 any measurement of channel bed gouging by upended ice.
5 Am I now to understand that you have?

6 A No, what we have done is
7 we have measured channel bed topography subsequent to
8 the breakup of the ice on the Mackenzie River.

9 Q You've taken soundings
10 and you haven't found any --

11 A We haven't found any in-
12 consistencies that could be attributed to that cause.
13 Now, I pointed out earlier that this is not conclusive.
14 They could be filled in by that time.

15 Q Well now, Dr. Cooper,
16 I take it it's perhaps obvious at this stage in the
17 hearings, but is it not so that there is no precedent
18 for buried pipeline crossings in the Territories or
19 in Northern Canada?

20 A That there is no precedent?

21 Q Yes.

22 A Well --

23 Q Except for the Pointed
24 Mountain Pipeline.

25 A Well, of course we had the
26 Canol Line that crossed a number of rivers. I don't like
27 to discuss it in terms of the Mackenzie because I be-
28 lieve it failed; however, I should point out that --

29 Q Well, let's be perfectly
30 fair, in speaking of buried crossings, that the so-called

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 precedents are really three: The first is the Trans-
3 Alaska, which hasn't been built yet.

4 A It's under construction.

5 Q Yes. So that isn't at
6 the moment able to tell us anything about buried cross-
7 ings and how they work in fact. So you wouldn't regard
8 that at this moment as a precedent.

9 A I think with respect to
10 buried crossings, for the most part we do have con-
11 siderable precedent from pipelines constructed in areas
12 further south.

13 Q No, but I'd like you, if
14 I could, to restrict you to precedents in northern
15 territories for a reason that I'll come to in a
16 moment.

17 A O.K.

18 Q And I take it that what
19 you have is the T.A.P., which isn't built yet. They
20 are probably using us as a precedent.

21 A I don't believe so, no.

22 Q You have the Canol Line
23 which (a) failed, and (b) is not there to be observed.

24 A Yes, the reason it failed,
25 I might point out, is that it crossed the Mackenzie
26 River without bearing measures to lay the pipe on the
27 bed.

28 Q I'm sorry, without what?

29 A They didn't, to my under-
30 standing, they didn't bury the pipe.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

THE COMMISSIONER: They laid
it on the river bed?

A Right.

Q That was a 4-inch oil
line, wasn't it?

A I believe so.

MR GENEST:

That was in World War
II, they were in a hurry.

A Yes.

MR. SCOTT: And the only actual
precedent that has been referred to is the Pointed
Mountain Pipeline.

A That's correct.

Q Have you made observations
or read the literature in connection with those
crossings? I know Dr. Hardy has told us something
about it, but I wonder if you had--

A No, the only information
in connection with those crossings that I have seen
is the report that Dr. Hollingshead had.

Q I take it that the
crossings, that the two crossings there are in no way
unusual, that is they would be duplicated by the crossings
of a number of rivers on this pipeline.

A I can't answer that, but
I won't disagree with you, no.

Q No, well you don't disagree.
Dr. Hardy, I take it the crossings there are in no
way unusual and would be duplicated in the Mackenzie

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

Valley Pipeline.

WITNESS HARDY: I doubt it if
the crossing of the Kotaneelee River would be duplicated
on the Mackenzie Valley.

Q Why not?

A Because it's a particular
type of river that is -- I don't know of any specific
river on the GAGSL line that has the same characteris-
tics.

Q Well what are the
characteristics that distinguish that river from all
the rivers that you're going to have to cross in the
Mackenzie Valley Pipeline?

A Well, the particular
hydraulics and the run-off characteristics.

Q Well, tell me what they
are, what makes it different?

A Well, in terms of what
happens, you see --

Q I don't want to interrupt
you but we will come to what happened later. I want
to know why that river is -- cannot be compared with
any of the rivers in the Mackenzie Valley.

A Well, I have to compare
it with the rivers that are -- that I have had exper-
ience with, personally, on the Trans-Mountain and West-
coast systems, and it has had different characteristics
than the rivers that I have had experience in that
area. Now the major difference is really in the runoff

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 characteristics in hindsight. In other words, the run-
3 off characteristics are somewhat different than I expected
4 they would be in the light of other rivers.

5 Q Well, why are the runoff
6 characteristics for that river different than runoff
7 characteristics that may attach to any of the rivers,
8 or some of the rivers you have to cross in this project?

9 A Well, it can be due to
10 a variety of conditions. One of them there is that
11 it has not a particularly large drainage basin, and
12 it originates in rather rugged topography.

13 Q Aren't there many rivers
14 that have to be crossed here that exhibit that character-
15 istic?

16 A Oh yes, if you like
17 details, it's a combination of details that produce
18 that condition.

19 Q Well, what I'm concerned
20 to assert, if it's true, is that that river on the
21 Twin Mountain, on the Pointed Mountain Line is not
22 fundamentally different than other rivers -- not all
23 of them but some of the rivers that you will have to
24 cross on this particular pipeline.

25 A No, I don't agree with
26 that, sir. It was of extremely rare occurrence.

27 Q Well, why is the river
28 unique? What makes that river one that is, the
29 characteristics of which are not found in this project?

30 A Well, there's a whole

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 series of factors.

3 Q Just tell them to me one
4 by one, if you will.

5 A Well, I've given you two.

6 Q Well, which are they?
7 The basin?

8 A The nature of the basin.

9 Q And you've told us that
10 that is a characteristic that may be found on some of
11 the rivers of the Mackenzie.

12 A And then there are the
13 climatic factors.

14 Q Well, are those climatic
15 factors not to be found associated with any river that
16 will have to be crossed in this project?

17 A Not necessarily.

18 Q They may be found here --

19 A They might be found, yes.
20 They could be found.

21 Q Any other differences?

22 A Then there is the vegeta-
23 tion characteristics.

24 Q Is there anything about
25 the vegetation there that cannot be found with respect
26 to some of the rivers in the Mackenzie Valley project?

27 A That's right, could be, yes.

28 Q Are you saying --

29 A And then there's the
30 characteristic of the bed materials themselves.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Is there anything about
3 those bed materials that may not --

4 A They can be matched
5 somewhere else, yes.

6 Q They can be matched here.

7 A Yes.

8 Q Well then, wouldn't you
9 agree with me, Dr. Hardy, that the individual character-
10 istics of that river can be found in various rivers in
11 the Mackenzie Valley project?

12 A As separate entities, yes.
13 And yet the performance, of course, is extremely rare.

14 Q Well, we'll come to
15 performance, but I take it that each of the character-
16 istics of that river will be duplicated at one or
17 another place in the Mackenzie Valley project.

18 A They may be, yes.

19 Q And in that sense there
20 is nothing unusual about that river.

21 A That's correct.

22 Q Well now, when was that
23 crossing built, the crossing of that river?

24 A Oh, I haven't got the
25 precise date but I think it was four years ago, if you
26 really want to know it accurately I could get it but
27 I haven't got it, I haven't got it in the hotel here
28 either.

29 Q And that crossing failed,
30 I understand.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1

2

A No, it didn't fail.

3

Q Well, what do you mean

4

it didn't fail?

5

A The pipe was never taken

6

out of service.

7

Q Aha, the pipe was never

8

moved. But wasn't the crossing a failure in the sense

9

that --

10

A It depends on your

11

definition of failure.

12

Q Well, of course, but

13

wasn't the crossing a failure not because the pipeline

14

was damaged but because very great environmental damage

15

was done as a result of the failure, and the necessity

16

to repair it on a number of occasions?

17

A The environmental damage

18

had nothing to do with the pipeline.

19

Q No, but I'm putting it

20

to you that while the crossing did not fail in the

21

sense that the integrity of the pipe was never damaged,

22

the crossing itself was a failure in environmental

23

terms.

24

A No, not due to the pipeline.

25

It was due to the natural conditions that would have

26

developed whether the pipeline was there or not.

27

The construction of the pipeline did not create the

28

flow conditions that resulted in the environmental

29

damage.

30

Q Dr. Hardy, several

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 reports have been made about this phenomena, isn't that
3 correct?

4 A I haven't seen them.

5 Q I see, including govern-
6 ment reports. Are you aware of those?

7 A I have not seen them.

8 Q And is it your assertion
9 that the environmental damage, if such it was, that
10 occurred there would have occurred even if no pipeline
11 had been built?

12 A Yes, that's primarily
13 correct. There may be some minor details that were
14 affected by the existence of the pipeline, but the river
15 running wild and the damage to the banks and the great
16 erosive attack on the banks had nothing whatever to do
17 with the pipeline.

18 Q But if there had been no
19 pipeline there, the erosive attacks by the heavy water
20 would have simply been allowed to occur, and no one
21 would have bothered about it. Right?

22 A They would have created
23 the same environmental damage as did occur.

24 Q Well, what you're telling
25 me is that every time a bank erodes there is environmen-
26 tal damage.

27 A That's the way I look at
28 it.

29 Q All right, and therefore
30 that erosion would have occurred whether you had a

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 pipeline there or not. Isn't the fundamental differ-
3 ence that when that natural erosion occurred the company
4 was obliged to do what it would not otherwise have
5 done, that is to go in and make it good?

6 A Make the banks good?

7 Q Yes.

8 A Well, this is done, it's
9 being done now, as a matter of fact, it may be finished,
10 it's been done this winter but not under the instruc-
11 tion to re-establish the original conditions but in
12 their own interests with the various regulatory author-
13 ities having a --

14 Q It's much to their
15 credit, I'm not being critical of it.

16 A They're protecting the
17 pipeline.

18 Q I'm simply --

19 A Not re-establishing
20 the environment.

21 Q I'm simply saying that
22 a phenomena of nature which occurred on that river
23 and which could have been allowed to exist is now
24 must be repaired by the pipeline company because the
25 pipeline is present.

26 A If there is no pipeline
27 they wouldn't be repairing it.

28 Q Exactly, and it's the
29 process of repair that causes very severe environmental
30 damage.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

A The process of repair?

Q Yes, taking big heavy

equipment in there.

A I don't agree with that

at all, in that location. The equipment that has been

taken in there is not as heavy as the equipment used

to build the pipeline. Nowhere near as heavy.

Q Well, I want to read you

a statement, a portion of a report. I'm not sure it's

an exhibit, by E.B. Owen of the Northern Natural

Resources & Environment Branch of the Department of

Indian & Northern Affairs, in a paper called:

"Observations on the right-of-way of the

Pointed Mountain Gas Pipeline,"

dated February, 1975, and prepared for the environmental

social Committee, Northern Pipelines Task Force on

Northern Oil Development. It refers to this reparation

of the erosion and it says:

"With the apparent consent of the Fisheries and

Marine Service, Environment Canada, Westcoast

Transmission bulldozed some 400-500 cubic yards

of gravel from a bar in the south channel of

the Kotaneelee River to cover an exposed section

of the pipe."

Now, is that true?

A I can't say it for

certain, sir.

Q Have you any reason to

doubt it?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

A No reason to doubt it, no.

Q The reasoning behind
granting permission to remove granular materials from
what in the past has been considered to be an environ-
mentally sensitive deposit is unclear to the writer.
Were you aware that that was an environmentally sensi-
tive area?

A I'm quite well aware of
that, yes. But the bar, you see, is not a stable
bar. The bars are -- they shift around and they're
re-established.

Q Well, are you aware --

A In addition to that,
in addition to the river bar material, you see, they
also brought in shot rock, they blasted rock from a
rock quarry they established to get riprapping.

Q Yes, was this nearby this
environmentally sensitive area?

A It was within a mile or
so, yes.

Q And isn't it true that
the other crossings have necessitated the continual
expenditure of money to maintain their integrity?

A The other crossings?

Q Yes.

A Which other crossings?

Q Well, I'm sorry, the
other crossing, there's one other, isn't there?

A Well, it hasn't involved

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 continual -- there has been some maintenance on one
3 bank.

4 Q But the pipe eroded on
5 the other crossing, didn't it?

6 MR. GENEST: Do you mean the
7 right-of-way, Mr. Scott?

8 MR. SCOTT: I'm sorry, the
9 right-of-way, yes.

10 A Well, the erosion of the
11 right-of-way, there is another problem which I have
12 not been directly associated with, that was at the
13 extreme north end of the line, where the erosion was
14 into a lake there and the fisheries people were con-
15 cerned about the transport of silt into that lake
16 which apparently was a good fishing lake. There had
17 been a lot of discussions on that as to how it could
18 be prevented and repaired, but I am not familiar with
19 the details of that.
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Hardy, Williams
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Cross-Exam by Scott

Q I ask you or Dr. Cooper,
can't we say that the experience of river crossings
in the Northern Territories has not been a happy one?

WITNESS HARDY: No, I would
not agree with that. The thing is that there were some
lessons learned from that one, and you see, for example
--

Q Did you take any
calculated risks in preparing that river crossing?

A As far as I was concerned,
sir, there was no calculated risk. I thought that was
a safe crossing.

Q You proceeded with per-
fect assurance that there would be no problems.

A As perfect assurance as
you can get with the irregularities of the climate.

Q Yours was pretty complete
yesterday. I think Dr. Hollingshead has --

WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: I
was just going to describe, I think that the second
crossing that you refer to is probably the LaBiche one
and the problem there was not associated with the
river channel at all. It seems to me that that was
an erosion problem on a slope some distance removed
from the crossing.

WITNESS HARDY: It was on the
valley bank, the bank was well back from the --

Q I understand that, Dr.
Hollingshead, that it was a natural phenomena, but I

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 take it it was necessary to repair it because the
3 pipeline ran through that area.

4 A Yes, I am sure it was.

5 Q Yes, and therefore --

6 WITNESS HARDY: There wasn't
7 any repair done, sir, on that, as far as I am aware.

8 Q Well, this --

9 A Just a little local
10 drainage done at the top of a slope.

11 Q Yes, was any equipment
12 taken in to do that?

13 A They probably had a
14 bulldozer in to do that work at the top.

15 Q Is there a road that
16 leads to the site?

17 A I can't recall how they
18 got that in there.

19 Q Yes, do you remember --

20 A It's one of the problems,
21 to get access with equipment in there; but there are
22 local people that have equipment.

23 Q Do you remember the season
24 in the year when this work was done?

25 A Well, I have looked at
26 this crossing in each of the last three years, as far
27 as our annual inspection, and the behaviour of the
28 south bank or the west bank, really, of the LaBiche
29 River was largely a matter of erosion.

30 Q Yes.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A And this was to a con-
3 siderable degree caused by the disturbance in the
4 construction of the pipeline; but that same sort of
5 phenomena has occurred in many other locations and
6 has been controlled. Now at one stage when I first
7 saw that my concern was that we were thawing perma-
8 frost, and this turned out to be not the case at all.

9 Q You said, Dr. Hardy,
10 at page 2742 that the phenomenas that occurred at
11 this river, that is the erosion and the repair
12 problems, was not completely unusual.

13 A That's at the Kotaneelee
14 River

15 Q Yes.

16 A It's also true of the
17 LaBiche River, too.

18 Q Yes.

19 A I think I went on to say
20 that there was -- I can think now of two other rivers
21 on the Westcoast system that were similarly unique,
22 if you like. We have now taken, you see, one of
23 these as well as the Kotaneelee, the operation of
24 re-establishing the pipeline has involved channel
25 control. It's a design system, it's not that they've
26 simply gone in there and patched up the pipeline or
27 taken -- done work only to protect the pipeline. It's
28 been done at both of those locations with the complete
29 co-operation of the regulatory authorities.

30 Q Indeed, at their

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

insistance.

A That's not quite right.

It's with complete co-operation, sir. There's no police-
man standing there saying, "You have to do this."

Q Well, perhaps --

A It was a joint effort and
the fisheries people in B.C. were very interested in
the designs that were forthcoming.

MR. SCOTT: Perhaps, Mr. Commissioner,
subject to proof, I would like to file as the next
exhibit this report.

THE COMMISSIONER: That is the
Owen Report?

MR. SCOTT: The Owen Report.

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, I
think that subject to what you may say, Mr. Genest,
it should be marked. I think Dr. Casagrande's report
should be marked too.

MR. SCOTT: Yes. I was afraid
to mention his name this morning, but I had that on my
list.

MR. GENEST: Sir, I have some
-- I know this is a problem that faces an Inquiry of
this kind all the time. If there are controversial
statements in these articles with which we don't agree,
the stand on the record is evidence which we can't
possibly challenge by cross-examination.

MR. SCOTT: No, it's subject
to proof, I understand it's subject to proof; but I

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1 think as it has
2 / been referred to, it should be put in. Now I'm
3 handicapped because the copy I have is only some
4 excerpted pages, and that's obviously no good.
5 I'll have to undertake to file the full report.

6 MR. GENEST: Well, do I under-
7 stand that you're undertaking to call the author of
8 the report?

9 MR. SCOTT: It's subject to
10 proof.

11 MR. GENEST: Well, I don't
12 know what that means, Mr. Scott.

13 MR. SCOTT: It means that if
14 I determine for Commission counsel staff that we wish
15 to rely on anything that is said in that report, we
16 obviously have to call the person who made it. If I
17 don't, it seems to me that unless there is some
18 particular position in respect of a government
19 document -- and at the moment I don't think there is --
20 I obviously can't rely on it if I don't call the author.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, it
22 seems clear enough with regard to the Owen Report,
23 having regard to what was said about Dr. Casagrande's
24 eminence in the field of geotechnical engineering, I
25 take it that he is a figure of great prominence along
26 with Terzaghi and others, that his article was in a
27 sense to be accepted in the same way as a textbook.
28 Maybe it's time for coffee and Mr. Genest and you might
29 think about it.

30 MR. SCOTT: May I make one

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 observation about that? I think that with the
3 exception of Dr. Morgenstern, who proposed what I called
4 a refinement, he didn't, I understood every panelist
5 yesterday to accept the paragraphs that I read.

6 THE COMMISSIONER: Oh yes, I
7 know that, but I was thinking that if Dr. Casagrande's
8 article were introduced and marked as an exhibit,
9 to what extent could I rely on anything else in that
10 article that might be certainly of usefulness in the
11 sense of offering some kind of background discussion
12 of geotechnical engineering and whatever else he said
13 there that led him to expound this statement he made
14 about the calculated risk. Now that it seems to me
15 is very much like a textbook, and we have always
16 acknowledged that we can look at textbooks that are
17 shown to be written by outstanding figures in any
18 field.

19 MR. GENEST: Sir, I take it it's
20 a matter of weight, and my problem with this kind of
21 thing is whether or not I am then expected, once an
22 article of that kind goes in, to -- if I don't agree
23 with any of the material that maybe in the textbook,
24 is there an obligation then cast upon me to take my
25 witnesses through the textbook and say, "well, he is
26 a very eminent man, but I disagree with his conclusion
27 here, there and everywhere."

28 THE COMMISSIONER: I don't
29 think you're obliged to do that, and certainly I should
30 think that the only passages in Dr. Casagrande's article

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 that would be of any real consequence would be those
3 that have been read. But for instance, take Dr. Terzaghi
4 presumaby he has written in this field and presumably
5 an article or a book that he's written might be brought
6 forward. I understand he's dead -- I hope I'm not
7 being --

8 MR. GENEST: The condition of
9 admissibility.

10 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, there
11 isn't much anybody can do about challenging anything
12 he's said by cross-examining him, and you'd have to
13 rely on Dr. Hardy or Dr. Morgenstern saying, "Well,
14 despite Dr. Terzaghi's eminence we think he went wrong
15 here."

16 MR. GENEST: Right,, sir.

17 MR. SCOTT: I think I neglected
18 to point out that not only did Dr. Morgenstern have
19 a qualification, or I think he put it another way of
20 looking at it, but Dr. Hardy , as I understood, didn't
21 agree with any of the paragraphs I read.

22 However, the transcript will
23 make that clear.

24 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, I
25 am interested in coffee at the moment. Is there some?

26 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED)
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)
(JOURNAL OF THE SOIL MECHANICS AND FOUNDATIONS
DIVISION, PROCEEDINGS OF THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF
CIVIL ENGINEERS, THE TERZAGHI LECTURE, MARKED
EXHIBIT 92)

(OBSERVATIONS ON THE RIGHT-OF-WAY OF THE POINTED
MOUNTAIN GAS PIPELINE, BY E.B. OWEN AND
D.W. VAN EYK, MARKED EXHIBIT 93)

MR. SCOTT:

Q Dr. Hollingshead, I
understand from the evidence that has been given that
you have proposed from time to time on the tributary
rivers that lead into the Mackenzie that you are
crossing, to install various standard training works,
as they may be required. And that you have made
preliminary designs for some of those training works?

WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: A Yes,
there will probably be some instances in which river
training works may be required.

Q Yes, and I take it that
those training works run the gamut from armouring to
spurs, to dykes and so on, of the type I think you
described by way of slides?

A That's possible.

Q Yes. And I also under-
stand that it may be necessary as you come to these
river crossings and see the necessity for this kind of

Clark, Hollingshead, McRobert
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 training work from time to time, to take these measures
3 so that they may extend beyond the right-of-way from time to
4 time?

5 A Some training works may
6 be outside the right-of-way, that's true.

7 Q Yes, so you may have to
8 build in these training works upstream, downstream and
9 sometimes in appropriate cases, for some substantial
10 distance even beyond the right-of-way?

11 A Possibly, yes.

12 Q When do you intend to
13 construct these? In what season of the year?

14 A I haven't given that
15 detailed consideration yet.

16 Q Well you would agree with
17 me wouldn't you that these works traditionally aren't
18 constructed in the winter when the rivers are ice
19 choked?

20 A Yes, I would agree
21 traditionally probably not in the winter.

22 Q Yes, and indeed if they
23 are to be constructed in the winter you will have to
24 get some heavy equipment in there to remove the ice
25 from the locations at which you propose to construct
26 the works?

27 A That's possible.

28 Q Yes, and I put it to you,
29 that in doing that there is a risk that you will cause
30 a substantial mess in the channel?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 A I don't think if the job
3 is done properly sir, that we would cause a substantial
4 mess, no.

5 Q On the other hand if you
6 don't perform this work in the winter, how are you going
7 to get to the site in the summer or autumn season? You're
8 not going to have a snow road are you?

9 A It seems to me that it
10 depends upon the sort of training works that one has
11 designed and how they are going to be constructed,
12 what they are going to be constructed of, what equipment
13 is required to do it. Some of it may be helicopter
14 transportable, some of it may simply be constructed
15 without any equipment whatsoever.

16 Q Yes, but do I understand
17 that if these works aren't done in the winter that it
18 will be necessary, in so far as helicopters can't
19 assist you, to go through the bush or over the land to
20 get to the site?

21 A I'm sorry, what was the
22 question?

23 Q Leave aside helicopters,
24 which is one of your options, and if this work is to be
25 done in the non-winter season, isn't it obvious that
26 you're not going to have a snow road?

27 A Yes.

28 Q And that you are therefore
29 going to have to come through the bush or over the land
30 with your heavy equipment or whatever equipment is

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 necessary to do this work?

3 A If heavy equipment is
4 required, yes.

5 Q Yes, now isn't that likely
6 to have environmental consequences of some profundity?

7 A Possibly.

8 Q Yes. The reason I asked
9 the question is this; do I understand you to say that
10 you have not given any consideration as to when this
11 kind of work will be done? That is the winter on the
12 one hand, or the summer on the other?

13 A We have not even really
14 pinned down exactly where such training works may be
15 required.

16 Q Yes, and therefore I take
17 it that it follows that you haven't given any
18 consideration as to when it will be done at those locations
19 where it is necessary to do it?

20 A Not with respect to
21 specific locations, no.

22 Q But not even generally,
23 have you?

24 A We have not given it
25 detailed consideration, no sir.

26 Q The reason I ask, is
27 because you have presented a series of designs for this
28 kind of work and indicated that where it is necessary
29 these will be suitable solutions. Wouldn't you agree
30 with me that an essential characteristic of preliminary

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 design work is the determination that the work can be
3 performed?

4 A I am confident that the
5 work can be performed, if required, yes sir.

6 Q Well, how can you be
7 confident that the work can be performed without having
8 given any thought to the season of the year and the
9 consequences of one season as opposed to another at
10 which it will be performed?

11 WITNESS WILLIAMS: A Mr. Scott,
12 may I contribute to that answer?

13 Q Well, if it doesn't
14 require a geotechnical answer, yes Mr. Williams, please.

15 A The magnitude of the
16 situation would govern, I would think that, if a situation
17 arose where the stream bed appeared that it was going
18 to expose the pipe, or do irreparable damage, then the
19 maintenance work would have to be done as quickly as
20 possible. And it would be done similarly to what
21 we have described as repairs to a pipeline failure. If
22 it happens in the summertime, that's when it would have
23 to be repaired, and the consequences would be similar.
24 And we've gone on to say that we do have the wherewithall
25 to repair damage, resulting damage.

26 Q I have no doubt that the
27 works that Dr. Hollingshead has designed/ has described
28 by way of slides, can be physically built. I am not
29 quarrelling about that at all. I'm sure that it can
30 be physically done. What I am concerned about Dr.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

Hollingshead, is if you are presenting those as design solutions, without consideration of the impact of the solutions themselves, such as appear when you have been unable to tell us when they will be constructed?

WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: A It seems to me that some would be constructed possibly some during the summer period. Possibly others during the winter period. And that this will depend upon site specific information and data which will be collected during the final design stage.

Q Yes, but isn't -- the reason for these works is to either protect the integrity of the pipe or to prevent some environmental damage. Isn't that so?

A By and large, yes.

Q Yes, and you have devised designs which you think as a geotechnician will solve those problems?

A We have not devised designs, we have shown some typical designs of the sorts and of things that can be used/ might be used in certain situations. It may well prove that these typical designs if you like, that we have illustrated, may in fact not be necessary.

Q I understand that, but surely when you are developing techniques for resolving these problems, and that's the stage you are at, isn't it?

A Yes/sir.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRobert
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 Q Yes. Surely you are
3 obliged to consider whether the solution is going --
4 ie. bank works, is going to create environmental
5 problems of its' own?

6 A Yes, we have given some
7 general thought to this, and I do not see any that
8 would create environmental damage in their own right.

9 Q But I take it what you
10 are saying is, that you've formed no determination as
11 a matter of principle as to when they should be built?

12 A I would say again, that
13 I think that in most instances they would probably be
14 done during the normal pipeline construction spread
15 seasons, but there may be instances in which that is
16 not appropriate.

17 Q Yes. Well now, let me
18 turn to another matter. Dr. Cooper, you have outlined
19 for the Commissioner the formula that you have
20 utilized to predict scour in straight river situations?

21 WITNESS COOPER: A Yes, that's
22 correct.

23 Q And you have shown how
24 by an expansion of that formula you predict scour under
25 jams? A modification of the formula, is that a
26 better way?

27 A No, it's a completely
28 different analogy.

29 Q All right. Well, let's
30 take the first, the formula by which you predict scour.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRobert
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 In open water situations, lets take that example first.
3 Would you agree with me that your formula, and I don't
4 criticise it, I don't know enough to criticise it, but
5 your formula is not one that is widely accepted in
6 engineering circles?

7 A I would have to ask you
8 what formula you are talking about here?

9 Q It's the formula that
10 you explained to the Commissioner, I believe at the
11 beginning of your evidence, in which you devise a
12 factor running from, depending on the case, 1.5 to 4.
13 And you apply that factor to measure notionally the
14 depth of scour?

15 A Well, I think that that
16 procedure rather than a formula if you like, I wouldn't
17 agree that it is not generally accepted. There is
18 controversy on the procedure for determining the depth
19 that goes into the formula. I will agree on that.

20 Q Well, would you agree
21 that that latter part of your formula, if I can call
22 it that is not widely accepted in engineering circles?

23 A No, sir, I wouldn't.

24 Q No. Well are you
25 familiar with a text edited by C.R. Neil, with articles
26 by a number engineers, called "Guide to Bridge Hydrolics"?

27 A Yes sir, I am.

28 Q Yes. That's a respectable
29 text, I don't put it any higher than that?

30 A It's a respectable text,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRobert
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

yes, I'll go along with that.

Q And would you agree from reading that book that your procedure is not included in that text? Although it purports to be a survey of procedures?

A To the best of my knowledge, and I would have to look through the text, nowhere in that text is there a procedure of any kind for predicting scour that is not associated with a bridge pier or a constriction of the channel.

Q Well, the chapter to which I refer is called, "Natural Scour at Uncontrolled Bridge Crossings". And you understand, do you not, uncontrolled bridge crossing to be a crossing at which there is no pier?

A That's correct, yes.

Q So what we're dealing with is scour, in a river, a bridge happens to be over it, but the bridge isn't in the river at all? When we're talking about natural scour at uncontrolled bridge crossings?

A I'd have to check precisely what Mr. Neil means by uncontrolled bridge crossings. There is probable a constriction dealt with in there.

Q Well let me, I can pass on to something else. There is a special chapter that deals with constricted crossings, and the -- I'll let you review it and you can make your comments on it, but

Clark, Hollingshead, McRobert
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 the point I want to make, if it's correct, is that
3 your procedure, this doesn't mean it's wrong, is not
4 a procedure that is referred to in this text?

5 A Could I see that text?

6 Q Certainly.
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Just before I ask you
3 to look at it, you would agree that there are other
4 procedures for the solution of this problem?

5 WITNESS COOPER: Yes, there are
6 other procedures. However, the other procedures are not
7 generally applicable to the types of configurations of
8 channels that we would get. There are certainly other
9 procedures that could be used, for example, to predict
10 scour, where we have a definite constriction of the
11 flow, a definite narrowing of the channel.

12 Q But I take it that the
13 other procedures are different than yours. Let me
14 put it this way, there are other engineers who would
15 present a different procedure confronted with this
16 problem than you have presented, in determining scour.

17 A In determining scour
18 in the types of cases we're dealing with, and the types
19 of cases I illustrated, I know of one other procedure
20 that is very theoretical, that could be used, yes.

21 Q You know only of one?

22 A In the circumstances that
23 we discussed.

24 Q I just want to get your
25 position so others can comment on it. You know only
26 of one?

27 A Yes, in the circumstances.

28 Q And whose is that?

29 A It's a modelling proced-
30 ure that has been developed at Colorado State University.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q And that may produce
3 different results, may it not?

4 A It may well produce
5 different results, yes.

6 Q And I take it that
7 before we get to the text again, that your procedure
8 includes a co-efficient which we've described.

9 A That's right.

10 Q 1.5 to 4.

11 A That's correct.

12 Q And I put it to you that
13 the rules for determining whether you use 1.5 or 2 or
14 2.5 or 3 or 4 are very vague and ill-defined.

15 A They're based on the
16 decision within a much narrower range than that would
17 be based on judgment. For example, if we were faced
18 with a confined meander bend where the straight reach
19 of the channel was essentially impinging on it, then
20 we would have to make a judgment within a narrow range
21 of say oh, 3 to 3.5, something like that, depending on
22 the severity of attack, the height of the bank, etc.

23 Q And I take it that when
24 you do that you make a personal judgment as to the
25 selection of the co-efficient, and that involves a
26 risk.

27 A It certainly involves a
28 judgment.

29 Q And it involves a risk
30 that the realities may exceed your co-efficient.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A In a sense I suppose
3 any judgment involves a risk, in that sense you're
4 correct.

5 Q Well now, will you turn
6 to the text and I'll turn to something else? Dr.
7 Hollingshead, would you agree with the proposition that
8 the rate at which a river shifts its channel in the
9 course of meandering is very hard to predict? I am
10 talking about the rate.

11 WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: It's
12 probably quite variable from river to river. I don't
13 know that that's the same as saying it's difficult to
14 predict. I think in some instances it might be relatively
15 easy to predict.

16 Q I'm not asking you about
17 whether the shifting is predictable. I'm asking you
18 whether the rate of shift is easy or difficult to
19 predict.

20 A That's what I'm talking
21 about.

22 Q And what is your answer?
23 I'm not clear.

24 A Well, certainly in some
25 rivers it's probably quite easy to predict, relatively
26 easy to predict; in others it might be less easy to
27 predict. By and large I think we have a reasonable
28 handle on the rate of shifting.

29 Q All right, and I take it
30 that the rate, whatever it is, is variable from year

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 to year and from place to place in the river.

3 A Yes sir, yes.

4 Q And I take it from
5 reading one of your reports that it is your judgment
6 that the banks at Swimming Point crossing are stable.

7 A That the banks are stable.
8 Well, they're -- what do you mean by "stable"?
9 That they are going to remain unmoved or in the same
10 position for the next several decades? There is no
11 serious instability there.

12 Q Well, let's just read
13 what you say. Again in this report entitled:

14 "Preliminary design of six major river crossings"
15 of August, 1974, you're the author of that, are you?

16 A Yes sir.

17 Q You say, dealing with the
18 Swimming Point crossing, under paragraph C-channel,

19 "Comparison of older photographic coverage and
20 more recent N.E.S.C.L. coverage,"

21 that's your own work, I take it,

22 "does not indicate any evidence of active
23 migration, though no detailed measurements
24 have been made."

25 A Yes.

26 Q Now isn't that a con-
27 clusion that in your judgment, based on photographic
28 coverage and more recent N.E.S.C.L. coverage, that
29 the bank there is stable?

30 A The evidence indicates

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 that the two banks are relatively stable. That's right,
3 yes.

4 Q And I take it that that
5 will be the determinant or one of the determinants
6 in deciding how and where and at what point you're
7 going to cross at that place.

8 A It's a factor, yes.

9 Q And it's an important
10 factor, if you have a stable bank you can make a much
11 more economic crossing.

12 A Yes sir.

13 Q Yes. Well, Dr. Morgen-
14 stern, I understand that -- and I may have it wrong --
15 that in a report of yours dated May, 1973, based on
16 observations, you concluded that the channel there was
17 shifting quite rapidly. Have I got that wrong, or have
18 I got that right?

19 WITNESS MORGENSTERN: I think
20 if you could read that to me, it would be better. It's
21 sometime since I made that report.

22 Q I am referring to a
23 report of May, 1973, called:

24 "Some observations on slope stability at major
25 river crossings,"
26 of which you and Dr. McRoberts are the authors.

27 A Yes sir.

28 Q And you say this at
29 page 18, after referring to the observations or the
30 data:

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott ,

1
2 "Thus it is evident that some 7 1/2 miles of
3 northward migration of the bend at Swimming
4 Point has occurred. This migration is currently
5 focused in the immediate proximity of the crossing
6 site,"

7 and then further down:

8 "Thus it is possible that erosive attack may
9 occur and the geomorphological evidence supports
10 this view."

11 Was that your view at the time?

12 A Yes, this is based on
13 an evaluation of the air photos at that time. We drew
14 attention to the fact that this particular feature
15 should be looked at in the field, and evaluated in
16 more detail.

17 Q Yes, and I take it that
18 your conclusion then was that the river channel was
19 shifting quite rapidly at that location.

20 A No, the observation was
21 by the shape of the channel it might support that
22 the river channel was shifting rapidly, therefore we
23 should look at this in the field. The presence of
24 frozen ground might indicate that the channel was
25 shifting slowly but that it was controlling the shape.

26 Q Well, when you said, Dr.
27 Morgenstern,

28 "Thus it is evident that some 7 1/2 miles of
29 the northward migration of the bend at Swimming
30 Point has occurred, this migration is currently

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 focused in the immediate proximity of the
3 crossing site."

4 Weren't you making a judgment that the crossing was
5 shifting?

6 A No sir, that 7 1/2
7 migration or incision in the channel might well have
8 taken 10 to 15,000 years.

9 We are drawing attention to
10 a peculiar geomorphic feature and likely it did occur
11 very slowly. Nevertheless, looking at the photograph
12 it was our responsibility to point these things out
13 and to direct the N.E.S. people back to the field to
14 re-evaluate.

15 Q I take it then it is
16 your conclusion that the bank at Swimming Point is
17 stable.

18 A Yes.

19 Q Dr. Cooper, have you
20 had an opportunity to look that up?

21 WITNESS COOPER: The method
22 that's stated in here is very similar and almost
23 identical to the method we're using. What it is is
24 a method based on Lacey's approach to estimating the
25 mean depth. However, they take that mean depth, and I
26 might read from the report where it says:

27 "Equation 4.5 gives only an estimated mean
28 depth across the channel section. To estimate
29 the maximum natural scour depth, a multiplying
30 factor must be applied,"

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 which is essentially or exactly what we are doing.

3 Q Well, isn't it fair to
4 say, Dr. Cooper, that there are two procedures:
5 One that is disclosed in that book, and one that is
6 yours. They may parallel from point to point but there
7 are two procedures that can produce different results.

8 A I consider them to be
9 identical. Now, I might also point out that this
10 procedure is, as is identified in here, applicable
11 only to sandbed rivers.

12 Q All right, that may be
13 so, but is it your proposition because others will
14 comment on it, is it your proposition that the method
15 you have utilized is disclosed in that text?

16 A The fundamentals of the
17 method we utilized is disclosed in the text.

18 Q Well, we've dealt with
19 the fundamentals. Is your procedure disclosed in that
20 text? I mean you may have a better one, I don't know.
21 But is your procedure disclosed in that text?

22 A Well, I'm not really sure
23 how to answer that. Basically, yes, it is.

24 Q All right. Dr. Cooper,
25 are you familiar with the term "avulsion" in the
26 context of river channels?

27 A Evulsion, no, I'm not.

28 Q Avulsion.

29 A Avulsion?

30 Q Yes.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1

2

A No sir.

3

Q There may be some other

4

word to describe it. I'm referring to a text, Leopold,

5

Wolman & Millar, "Alluvial processes in Geomorphology,"

6

is the text familiar to you?

7

A Yes, I am familiar with

8

many parts of it.

9

Q It's a standard text?

10

A Yes sir, in the field

11

of geomorphology, it certainly is.

12

Q At page 84 at the bottom

13

the author says this, and I'll just read it to you

14

to see if it brings a concept to your mind that you

15

may have been describing in some other language:

16

"Major avulsions or changes in channel direction

17

and form occur regularly, particularly in semi-

18

arid regions and even in humid regions during

19

catastrophic rare floods."

20

Are you familiar with the process where by there are

21

major changes in channel direction?

22

MR. GENEST: Mr. Commissioner,

23

I must ask again that Mr. Scott should follow the

24

usual procedure. He sort of reads out a paragraph,

25

doesn't ask the witness whether he agrees with it or

26

not. To me it's not fair to these witnesses to spring

27

texts at them, except in the accepted way which has

28

been developed because it is fair to the witness.

29

MR. SCOTT: All right, I think

30

that's a fair comment, Mr. Commissioner, and I accept

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 it.

3 Q Does that help you
4 understand the term "avulsion" or not?

5 A Yes, it does.

6 Q All right, now what do
7 you understand by "avulsion"?

8 A Well, changes in channel
9 course.

10 Q And is it fair to say
11 that conditions favoring an avulsion or a change in
12 the channel course, build up gradually?

13 A In some circumstances
14 they may build up gradually. In some circumstances
15 quite rapidly.

16 Q Yes, but in any event,
17 regardless of the buildup, the exact time at which
18 the channel changes its course is unpredictable.

19 A The exact time, yes.

20 Q Now, looking at the
21 Mackenzie Delta, isn't it clear that there is a dis-
22 tinct possibility that there will be a change in
23 course in that delta from the middle channel to the
24 east channel at some time in the future?

25 A This is getting into the
26 area of predicting the long-term changes within the
27 delta. Now, I think within the channels that certainly
28 we are crossing, we would fully anticipate whatever
29 changes could occur.

30 Q Well, just so I'll be

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 clear, what we're talking about here, as I understand
3 it, is a process in which there are two channels and
4 one, ^{and} as a result of conditions, the water in one
5 eventually moves into the other, and the first either
6 dries up or becomes minor.

7 A Yes, you could certainly
8 get a very long-term change in the delta, in the
9 tendency of the flow to the east channel or for that
10 matter back to the middle channel.

11 Q All right now, what do
12 you say from your studies about the prospect of a
13 change from a flow from the middle channel to the
14 east channel?

15 A I would say that these
16 changes would be very, very slow in developing.

17 Q Well, let me ask you this,
18 do you predict a change of that type?

19 A We have not considered
20 it to be a major factor in the designs, we don't
21 consider, because of the time it would take, to have
22 a major change of that nature.

23 Q Before we get to that,
24 do you regard that change as a distinct possibility
25 in the future? Leave aside time.

26 A Well, how far in the
27 future?

28 Q No, is an examination of
29 the river channels sufficient to enable you to conclude
30 whether that change is in the works?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A No, I wouldn't say that
3 we can conclude that it is in the works and it will
4 take place, because other events within the delta may
5 halt the process.

6 Q I take it that in any
7 event, the crossing at Swimming Point makes no allowance
8 for that possibility.

9 A No sir, it doesn't.

10 Q So that as far as Swimming
11 Point is concerned, you've assumed that that avulsion
12 is not going to occur within the lifetime of the
13 pipeline.

14 A We certainly have not
15 considered that the entire flow of the Mackenzie would
16 be directed through the east channel, no.

17 Q And again you've made
18 a judgment and taken a risk in setting your crossing.

19 A I would consider it a
20 negligible risk.

21 Q All right. Have you
22 taken the opinion of others with respect to the
23 possibility of that avulsion within the life of the
24 pipeline?

25 A Only in the respect
26 that amongst the other members of our firm and of
27 Northern Engineering Services we have certainly dis-
28 cussed in some detail the things that ought to be
29 considered.

30 Q No outside opinion?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A No, no outside opinion.

3 Q And would you agree with
4 me that avulsions of that type could occur on many of
5 the crossings on the Yukon North Slope?

6 A I would agree that
7 avulsions and very rapid changes in channel pattern
8 could occur on the braided rivers on the North Slope.
9 Not of that type, though.

10 Q I see.

11 A It is a different
12 type.

13 Q But situations in which
14 the channel changes, the principal or one of the
15 principal changes changes.

16 A Yes sir. . .

17 Q And I take it that in
18 preparing your river crossings you have not made any
19 assessment as to whether those avulsions are likely
20 or unlikely within the life of the pipeline?

21 A Well, I would say we
22 certainly have made an assessment in that we have
23 based in stating our methods, we simply state that
24 they can occur and will be accounted for in the
25 designs.

26 Q Yes, but I take it that in
27 terms of placing the pipe you have not made any allow-
28 ance for those possibilities on the basis that you
29 think they are unlikely to occur, in the short-term.

30 A No, we've -- it's not

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

relevant to my way of thinking in the placement of the pipe; but we've designed the crossing or we will design the crossings on the basis that they will occur.

Q So that what is going to happen, I take it -- and tell me if I'm wrong -- is that at each of these crossings at some point a judgment will have to be made as to whether an avulsion is likely within the lifetime of the pipeline.

A I think we're talking about the same thing in the North Slope braided rivers. To my way of thinking the judgment has been made, they will happen and they'll happen on an annual basis. We get very rapid shifting of these channels.

Q Well, has the -- in each case has the, on the Yukon North Slope, has the entry of the pipe into the river channel taken account of all prospective avulsions?

A Yes, our design methods are such that we would take account of them.

Q Because you would agree with me, that if during the life of the pipeline, there is an avulsion that has not been predicted, that goes behind the sag bend, it may cause difficulties.

A It could cause difficulties, yes.

Q Not only engineering but environmental difficulties.

A I think more engineering than environmental.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
CrossExam by Scott

Q Well, to fix the engineering ones there may be some environmental ones, would that be fair?

A It would be fair to say, yes.

THE COMMISSIONER: Has Dr. Hollingshead's report on six river crossings been marked as an exhibit? I know it must be on the list of documents provided by Arctic Gas, but for me to be able to examine it it should be marked as an exhibit.

MR. SCOTT: I don't think it has, Mr. Commissioner.

MR. GENEST: I don't believe it has either.

(DR. HOLLINGSHEAD'S REPORT MARKED EXHIBIT 94)

MR. GENEST: We'll tender it, sir.

THE COMMISSIONER: Just give it the next number, Miss Hutchison, and when Mr. Genest supplies a copy, it can be marked.

MR. SCOTT: Dr. Hollingshead, I wonder if you could describe for us with respect to let us say a 10 to 30-foot wide river on the Yukon North Slope how you propose to cross that? What are you going to do, ditch it?

WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: This 10 to 30-foot wide river, is that a single channel in size channel, is that one sub-channel in a --

Q One channel.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

A A single channel.

Q Yes.

A The pipe would be buried
in a ditch beneath the stream bed.

Q But I take it it will
be ditched, will it? A ditcher will go across the
river.

A Not necessarily a
ditcher.

Q How will it be done then?

A It could be a back-hoe.

Q And what is going to be
done with the spoil that is produced in that situation,
which I take it will be piled on the ice while the work
is being done?

A That's right, it would
be probably piled on the ice.

Q And then what's going to
be done with it later?

A Then it would be
returned to the ditch over above the pipe.

Q I see, and this, I take
it, to be clear is going to be done in the winter?

A It would undoubtedly be
done in the winter.

Q Do you think there's
any practical prospect that the repair work necessary
as a result of that exercise can be done in the winter?

A The repair work?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

Q Yes.

MR. GENEST: What repair work?

A Nothing has been broken
yet.

MR. SCOTT: No, but I take
it that after --

THE COMMISSIONER: I hope not.

MR. SCOTT: No, I don't make
myself clear. You see, you speak of repair work in
terms of the pipe breaking all the time, and I'm quite
content that you people will be able to solve those
problems. I'm interested in repair work in another
context, that is repair to river banks and repair to
the flow of streams and so on. Don't worry about the
pipe, I'm sure that you people can handle repairing
that. Is it going to be possible to affect that kind
of repair, of which I'm speaking, in the winter?

A You're talking about
re-building the banks?

Q Rebuilding the banks
again, restoring the channel.

A Yes, sir.
Q Well, what are you going
to do with the ice and the snow?

A The ice will melt; the
snow will disappear.

Q And it's intended that
this will be done in the winter. How are you going
to get through the ice and snow to do this repair
work?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

THE COMMISSIONER: Will you wait for the ice to melt? Will you wait for the snow to melt? Is that what you meant?

A No, no, no. I think perhaps I should let Mr. Williams -- I suspect this will come up more in the construction panel --

MR. SCOTT: I know it will, and I want to hear Mr. Williams on that, but I put it to you that in terms of presenting a design solution for these problems, you are obliged, are you not, to consider the environmental impact of the solution?

A But as I --

Q Isn't that fair?

A Yes.

Q And isn't it so that -- others may have considered it -- but that you in preparing the design haven't considered it?

A Oh, I think we have. Now I just lost you a little bit. Are we talking about the ditching, preparing the ditch to receive the pipe?

Q No, I'm satisfied that the pipe will get in the ditch all right, but as I understand from the exercise you're going to send in a ditcher or a backhoe and the stuff will be piled up on top of the ice and snow, and then will be replaced -- is that correct, Mr. Williams -- into the trench?

A It will be replaced into the trench to the original bed deposit.

Q Well now I take it that

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

the situation isn't just going to be left that way,
is it?

MR. GENEST: What situation?

I can't understand the questions, Mr. Chairman.

A I'm sorry, I'm a little
lost, too.

MR. SCOTT: How are you going
to repair the bank?

A The bank will be rebuilt
according to the final design that is produced for
that particular crossing.

Q When will it be rebuilt?

A At the time, immediately
after the pipe is installed and the material has to
be put back into place.

Q In the winter?

A That is correct.

Q And as a matter of
implementing your design, are you satisfied that that
can be done before the snow and the ice have been
removed, to your final satisfaction?

A You've got to take the
snow and the ice off before you can produce the ditch,
presumably.

Q At the ditch area, yes.

A At the ditch area, yes.

And then the pipe goes in and then the bank will be
rebuilt and the ditch and the stream bed re-filled with
the available material, and any question of what

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

happens to the snow and ice after that, it seems to
me to be irrelevant.

Q All right, if that's your
view. Mr. Williams, did you want to add something?

WITNESS WILLIAMS: I was wonder-
ing how this is going to be any different from tens or
20 or hundreds maybe of river crossings built in
Northern Alberta and British Columbia in the wintertime?

Q It's probably not, but
there are special mandates connected with this pipeline
that don't attach to your other pipelines, and it's about
those environmental mandates that I'm concerned to
ask questions.

A Well, traditionally
rivers in Northern Alberta and British Columbia are
crossed in the wintertime and they are restored at
the time of construction.

Q I take it, Mr. Williams,
that you're not telling the Inquiry that you're going
to build the kind of pipeline that you build in
Southern Ontario.

WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: He said
Northern Alberta.

Q Well, let's take Southern
Ontario or Northern Ontario.

WITNESS WILLIAMS: Some of
the procedures are the same.

Q Are they going to produce
with
the same impacts/which I am familiar?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

I would have thought that there was a special environmental obligation here which you willingly assumed, or assumed, and which makes you particularly conscious of these matters.

A Yes, we have outlined some special procedures that take into account environmental considerations.

Q So it's the position of Northern Engineering that it's going to be done better here, isn't it?

MR. GENEST: Better than what, Mr. Scott?

MR. SCOTT: Better than the traditional pipeline methods exhibited in Southern Canada in terms of restoring the environment.

A Special procedures will be required for the particular environment, yes.

MR. SCOTT: Excuse me one moment, Mr Chairman.

THE COMMISSIONER: Just so I understand where we're at, the comparison with pipelines in Northern Alberta or Northern B.C., however far it extends, is limited, as I understand it, by two things, first of all certainly on the North Slope of the Yukon you are within the region of continuous permafrost; and secondly, you haven't built pipelines to carry chilled gas in Northern Alberta or Northern B.C. There is no question about what I've just said, is there?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

A I agree, sir, yes. But
I don't think the bank restoration is contingent on
the chilled pipe concept.

Q No, but bank restoration
may well be affected by the fact that the bank lies
within the zone of continuous permafrost. Presumably
that's a much different problem than what you'd
encounter in restoring a bank in a zone where there
is no permafrost, or in a zone of discontinuous
permafrost.

A But, these Northern
Alberta and British Columbia crossings that I speak
about do have a substantial depth of seasonal frost
at the time of construction, and certainly
the frost will be deeper, but the procedures, I
think, are known.

MR. SCOTT: May I just
clear up a number of matters that we have in our
notes?

Q First of all, Dr. Hardy
on Monday, I think, Monday a week ago, made some
observations about blasting of ice jams. Do I under-
stand that no ice jams have ever been blasted on the
Mackenzie River?

WITNESS HARDY: What I said,
Mr. Scott, was that blasting would be considered, and
this is what I pointed out yesterday.

Q Yes, well --

A And it will be considered

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

because every time there is an ice jam somewhere and it's causing trouble, someone suggests blasting. Now there have been all sorts of rivers in Northern Alberta and the Northwestern part of this continent where blasting has been considered and has been used with ice jams.

Q Yes. Well, the reason I asked the question is that obviously blasting in some respects/make Dr. Cooper's predictions less key than they are now, and the first question I want to ask; is anybody on the panel familiar with blasting on the Mackenzie River of ice jams? Has it ever been done?

A On the Mackenzie River?

Q Yes.

A Well, I am not familiar with any, but there is no reason to believe that it would be any different than anywhere else; and the part of the blasting technique that would come in in these considerations that I'm talking about would be that it doesn't put Dr. Cooper out of business, it's part of the game.

Q All right, well we don't want that, but I take it then we can affirm that as far as we know it has never been done on the Mackenzie River, and I think Dr. --

A I can't say that at all. The Mackenzie River is a long river and they've been having ice jams for generations.

Q You don't know --

1 A And there may have been some
2 done --

3 Q You don't know of any, Dr.
4 Hardy?

5 A But you asked me to say
6 that there weren't any.

7 Q Well, I don't ask you to
8 speak beyond your personal knowledge. Do you know of
9 any blasting of ice jams?

10 A I don't know --

11 MR. GENEST: Oh, come on, Mr.
12 Scott. He answered your question quite adequately.

13 MR. SCOTT: Dr. Hardy is fencing
14 with me. Dr. Hardy is fencing and --

15 A No, I'm not fencing at all,
16 sir.

17 MR. GENEST: My learned friend,
18 Mr. Commissioner, turned a question that said, "Do
19 you know of any blasting"?

20 And Dr. Hardy said, "No."

21 And he said, "So then there's
22 been no blasting," which is an entirely different --

23 MR. SCOTT: If I did that, I
24 apologize, I apologize to you, Dr. Hardy, as well.

25 Q Now --

26 A I'm sorry if I am not making
27 myself clear.

28 Q -- do you know of any blast-
29 ing of ice jams on the Mackenzie?

30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

A I know of none, no,

Q I take it nobody else
knows of any?

A Oh, I wouldn't say that
at all.

(LAUGHTER)

Q Nobody else on the panel,
is there anybody else on the panel who knows of blast-
ing ice jams in the Mackenzie? I take it the answer
is negative.

A Right.

Q All right, now you said,
as I understood you, Dr. Hardy, that it was a matter
that should be considered.

A I said it would be
considered, not should; would be considered.

Q All right. Is Northern
Engineering in the course of considering it?

A No, in the context that
I suggested that in the evidence, sir, and as I
explained a few minutes ago, it's almost an axiom that
if you are faced with an ice jam that you figure was
going to damage this pipeline, the people that were
concerned with the protection of the pipeline would
give consideration to blasting, and in that considera-
tion there would be a great number of factors come in,
and they would get experts in the field of blasting
ice jams.

Q The point that concerns

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

me is that if it is the position that Hasting of ice
jams on the Mackenzie River maybe considered at some
point by the applicant, for whatever purpose; I want
to know if any work is being done on that subject.

A Not that I know of.

There is know-how, there is expertise available on
this that you could go out and engage.

Q Well, my point, and
perhaps Dr. Hollingshead can answer it, is if this
is seriously being considered, or is likely to be
considered, what studies have been done about its
possibilities and about its effects?

A You're taking the
existing all out of the context of the original
evidence that was given, sir.

WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: I was
just going to say we are not now considering
blasting. We are not actively considering blasting,

Q And I take it that it's
not -- as far as you can see -- a realistic prospect?
At the moment.

A At the moment we are not
looking at it as a potential solution or realistic
solution to the problem.

Q Well, I'm entirely
satisfied with that.

WITNESS HARDY:
I must point out, Mr.

Scott, though, you see in the government regulations
that are being proposed, blasting is given attention

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

in the subjunctive mood. The subjunctive mood, sir.

Q Oh, in the subjunctive
mood, I understand.

MR. GENEST: Many subjunctive
blasts --

MR. SCOTT: I've got Northern
Engineering Services' position on record with respect
to blasting, and I'm entirely satisfied with that. I
don't have to pursue something that they don't take
-- that they are not actively considering.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRobert
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams,
Cross Examination by Scott

Well now Dr. Hollingshead,
let me just ask one or two questions about the crossing
at Swimming Point.

You've decided that there
should be a twin crossing there as I understand it?

WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: A

We have recommended a dual
crossing.

Q Yes, and one of the pipes
will be in the position that the original pipe was going
to be in, is that correct?

A Yes, sir.

Q And the other, I under-
stand will be on the north side of the original location?

A It's downstream, sir.
That's northeast.

Q Did you give any consideration
for reasons that we will have to deal with later, to
placing it on the other side of the original line?
That is, on the south side?

A I believe that was
looked at at least, the reach of the river was studied
but this was a very preliminary study, and it would
certainly bear a further looking in the final design
stages.

Q Yes, Were you aware that
the northernmost crossing, the additional line to the
north downstream, goes through an area that some at
least regard as recreationally and archaeologically

important at the Holmes River?

A No, I wasn't aware of that sir.

Q No. Well now, in Section 8A page 6 of the application, and I don't know who should deal with this, except that it has to do with the rivers. The applicant claims to have developed special techniques for crossing "beaded streams." And we don't seem to have heard anything about that, if I understood what people were talking about.

Where is the evidence of that technique, or the attempt to develop one? Are there reports that deal with the special techniques that you have developed to cross beaded streams?

A We showed very simple schematic diagrams of typical crossings in the Exhibits.

Q Yes, but I --

A This included one which would accommodate a so-called beaded stream.

Q Yes. The promise of the application to me at least was that a special technique had been developed to deal with beaded streams. Is that correct?

A I don't think that there is anything special about it.

Q You are just going to cross that stream, the way you cross all the others? It seems to hold out a prospect of --

MR. GENEST: Could I have a

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

reference to that, Mr. Scott?

MR. SCOTT: Yes, it's at
page number 6.

THE COMMISSIONER: That's
Exhibit 54? Is that Exhibit 54? And that's, what is
it again, 8 what, Mr. Scott?

MR. SCOTT: It's 8A.

THE COMMISSIONER: 8A, page --

MR. GENEST: Tab one
description.

MR. SCOTT: I don't have the
tabs, I just have loose sheets. Page 6.

I should perhaps read it.
"An example of an environmental problem", it's the
third paragraph --

THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, that's
right.

MR. SCOTT: --"which was
solved as a result of such interdisciplinary work,
involved the beaded stream, which appeared to be of
little engineering consequence during the initial
route location work".

Q Now, I take it, stopping there,
that what that means is that the beaded stream didn't
present any engineering problems that were unusual?
Is that correct?

WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: A I
think that's fair to say, yes.

Q The passage goes on, "such

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 streams however, are often used by Arctic grayling for
3 critical spawning and summer feeding activity. It was
4 therefore necessary for the engineers to develop
5 techniques for crossing these streams so that their
6 ability to support fish life was not impaired."

7 MR. GENEST: Where does
8 'special' appear?

9 MR. SCOTT: Well it doesn't,
10 I put that --

11 MR. GENEST: Well again Mr.
12 Commissioner I must insist that if my friend is putting
13 statements to the witnesses he should quote them
14 accurately.

15 MR. SCOTT: Q All right, let
16 me ask this question Dr. Hollingshead? Is there
17 anything unusual or special about the techniques that
18 you are going to use to cross beaded streams?

19 A Not particularly I don't
20 think, except that the location would be such that it
21 would be between beads presumably.

22 Q No, but this sentence
23 says, " it was therefore necessary for the engineers
24 to develop techniques for crossing these streams."

25 WITNESS CLARK: A Perhaps I
26 could add to that Mr. Scott?

27 Q Thank you Dr. Clark.

28 A I recall a discussion
29 with our fish consultants where they pointed out to us
30 that the beaded streams were used in some instances for

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

over-wintering, or for a migratory path.

Q Yes.

A We had been unaware of that, because they are rather small streams in many instances you can step over them or get beyond them, but they are quite deep. They are characterized by, in areas where ice has melted out to form what looks like a bead. When this was pointed out to us at that time, we felt that there were designs that could maintain a flow through those areas.

We have since expanded on our analysis to determine whether or not the ice would freeze to the bottom, at the location of the pipe. We have found that a very small flow is required to keep that open. These were convective studies that were made by Dr. Harlin and some of them are referred to in the responses to questions in the PAGG group, but not specifically to beaded streams.

There was also, we have discussed in previous evidence, some of the techniques that we could use to maintain flow in a gravel bed where there is significant bed flow. So that these would be treated on an adhoc basis.

Q Dr. Clark, I don't want to take up the time of the Commission, but can you direct me to the place in your application or in your material, where you set out the technique that you have developed that will be used at beaded streams?

A Not in the application,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

no. Other than the typical drawing that Dr. Hollingshead referred to.

MR. GENEST: It seems to me that that was discussed Mr. Commissioner, in chief, that very problem, the forming of an ice barrier at a stream where downstream fish need a continuing water supply, and we had quite a discussion as to the methods which would be used.

MR. SCOTT: We haven't been able to find in the transcript as I understand it, any technique that was developed for beaded streams. Perhaps if there is one, without wasting any time, Dr. Hollingshead on a later occasion can let me know what the technique is, and where it can be found, so that we can examine it. I may have overlooked it, but--

Q Well now, one other matter if that matter can be left that way, is that in his examination by Mr. Bayly, Mr. Dau on the last panel indicated that it would take a few days, to one week to restore service in case of a damaged river crossing.

The dual river crossing report of July, 1974, indicates does it not Dr. Hollingshead that the worst case failure would be between 30 days and 150 days?

WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: A Yes, sir.

Q Yes, is there any way of extrapolating an average case that isn't a worst

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Willaims
Cross Examination by Scott

case, but isn't the best case?

WITNESS WILLIAMS: A Mr.

Scott, are you sure that he was referring to river crossings in that--

Q I thought he was. I just didn't think he intended to say that, and I just wanted to clarify with this panel.

A I don't think he did. I think he was referring to a failure on dry land.

Q I am now told that it may have been a typographical error, but I take it that if he was referring to a river crossing, this panels' view is that the worst case is 30 days to 150 days, and I take it the best case is substantially more than a week?

A At river crossings?

Q At river crossings. What do you think the mean time for repairing a river crossing, not the worst but not the best would be?

A We have dealt with this in one of the responses to the Assessment Group where we suggest that possibly a temporary line would be installed. It would depend on the river; a temporary crossing could probably be installed and back into service in as short as time as a week, but again depending on the time of year and what the river was doing. But, and then the permanent repair would take much longer. Putting in a permanent repair, a replacement of the whole river section would essentially take as

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 long as the original installation. So I don't think
3 there's a real definitive answer to your question. It
4 would depend on circumstances.

5 Q Now let me turn to one
6 other matter. Dr. Cooper, I take it that in designing
7 any river related structure one of the inputs to your
8 design is what is called the design flow?

9 WITNESS COOPER: A That is
10 correct.

11 Q Yes.

12 A You are referring to
13 training works? Or a buried pipeline crossing?

14 Q Either one?

15 A Well, of course there is
16 use
17 different/of design flow in either case, but go on.

18 Q And I take it, that , if
19 I can put it in laymens' language, the design flow
20 is an estimate depending upon which standard you use
21 of the volume of water that passes a given point at
22 a given time?

23 A The rate of which; if you
24 add the rate to that, yes.

25 Q All right. Is it the
26 rate or the rate and the volume?

27 A Well, it's the rate at
28 which that volume passes.

29 Q I see. Would it be correct
30 to say that both the Assessment Group and a large
consulting firm have expressed doubts about the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

adequacy of the design flow figure that you have assumed?

A I'm aware of concerns that have been expressed about the application of the design flow data that we are using. In some cases this was a misunderstanding, in some cases -- I'll go into the misunderstanding I think, just to clarify it.

The one instance I'm thinking of was on the design on the Firth River, whereby our selection of a design flow was the flow in a sub-channel which naturally would be considerably less than the river in total was carrying, at that time.

I believe there's been some concern expressed as to the adequacy of the data in general that we are using. And I would like to point out that basically this is data, and that we are ourselves reassessing the most severe flows that we will use for different types of design.

Q Well, I take it that in one of your reports which has been referred to this morning, you recommend that the design discharge for river crossings should be what is called the "One Hundred Year Flood"?

A This was recommended in one of my reports for preliminary design done some years ago, several years ago.

Q Well is that design flow basis on which your studies have been made? Is

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 that what you are using?

3 A No, not in all cases, no.

4 That's what we are using on the Mackenzie River.

5 Q That's what you are
6 using on the Mackenzie River?

7 A Yes.

8 Q What are you using in
9 other cases?

10 A We're using an estimate
11 of a severe, or an extreme flow that is based on an
12 analysis of maximum recorded flows. It has no statistical
13 significance, that estimate, but in practice we find
14 it very useful for design.

15 Q Well let's take the
16 "hundred Year Flood", first, and I wonder if you could
17 explain, I was going to say to the Commissioner, but
18 perhaps to me, what that is? Because that is used
19 on the Mackenzie isn't it?

20 A Yes, that has been used
21 on the preliminary designs on the Mackenzie.

22 Q That's what you are using
23 on the Mackenzie?

24 A What we mean by "a
25 hundred year flow" is the flow that has a statistical
26 probability of recurrence once in a hundred years. The
27 way we arrive at this number is to analyse existing
28 stream flow records and do a frequency or statistical
29 analysis on the maximum flow in each of the years
30 throughout the period of record.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

1
2 Usually it's necessary to
3 extrapolate this analysis since we very seldom have
4 flow records that extend to a hundred years. In the
5 case of the Mackenzie it's in the order of 25 years
6 that we have these records. In that way we come up
7 with a flood discharge of a frequency recurrence of
8 one in a hundred years.

9 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, the
10 concern being I take it that once in a hundred year
11 flood might occur within the lifetime of the pipeline?

12 A Yes, of course there is
13 a concern of this, and there is a very real probability
14 associated with it. However, I should like to
15 point out that in the final design of these crossings
16 we will, particularly the Mackenzie River crossing
17 where fortunately we do have a fair amount of flow data,
18 we would look at these with respect to predicting
19 scour on the basis of even higher flows occurring.

20 Now I think it's also
21 important to realize, and I hope I don't get too
22 technical here, that the flood frequency curve on the
23 Mackenzie River is very flat or unresponsive. This is
24 due to the rather constant input from Great Slave Lake.
25 Now, in practical terms what I mean by that is the
26 difference, the relative difference say between a 50
27 year flood and a 100 year flood, or the relative
28 difference between say a 100 year flood and a flood
29 of even rarer occurrence, is low.

30 In other words, there is not

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross Examination by Scott

that much difference in the flow, because of this lake
input. It's low in comparison to rivers such as the
Liard or the Peace etcetera.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
HardyWilliams

Cross-Exam by Scott

Q Well, Dr. Cooper, how many years of stream flow observations are necessary at a river site to make a reliable estimate of the 100 year flood, within let's say a 20% range?

WITNESS COOPER: I would say for a river the type that we're dealing with, ^{with} the Mackenzie, it's something in the order of 25 or 30 years would be considered adequate. For a river that exhibited greater changes in these flows you would need possibly 35 to 50 years.

Q Well, I put it to you that that to say/with a river that exhibits greater changes you really beg the question, don't you, because you're trying to predict from 35 years' experience what the experience over 100 years will be?

A What it might be.

Q What it might be.

A That's correct.

Q Well, would you disagree with an engineer who asserted that in order to determine a reliable estimate for the 100- year flood you would have to have observations pretty close, if not in excess, of 100 years?

A Again this depends, sir, on your degree of reliability. Now, on the Mackenzie River --

Q Well, I'm concerned about risk, that's why I asked this.

A -- on the Mackenzie River,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 I have to emphasize that we do have a lot of things
3 working for us, primarily the rather constant inflow
4 from Great Slave Lake, which forms a significant part
5 of that flow.

6 THE COMMISSIONER: Did you
7 say Great Bear Lake?

8 A Great Slave Lake. Great
9 Bear Lake also adds to the rather well-tamed behaviour
10 of the flow.

11 Q A minute ago in answer
12 to my question I thought you said Great Bear, but you
13 meant Great Slave?

14 A I meant Great Slave.

15 MR. SCOTT: Well, just so I'll
16 understand for later purposes, is it your proposition
17 that you can obtain a reliable estimate of the 100-
18 year flood after 25 years of observation on the
19 Mackenzie Valley? On the Mackenzie River?

20 A Yes, it's my opinion
21 that 25 years on the Mackenzie River is adequate. On
22 a lot of other rivers I'd say no to that.

23 Q What's required on
24 other rivers that are within the ambit of this project?

25 A I would say 35 to 50.

26 Q I see. Well now let's
27 see if I understand what that means. Let's assume that
28 a river crossing of the Mackenzie, as it will be, I
29 gather, is designed to 100 year flood level, the
30 design flow. Let's assume that, all right?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1

2

A Fine.

3

Q And let us also assume

4

-- it may not be the case -- that any greater flood
would damage the crossing.

5

7

A I agree with you, it

would not be the case but --

8

Q Well, let's assume it.

9

A Fine.

10

Q That's what we're talking

11

about, and let's assume that the crossing has a
life of 25 years.

12

13

A Fine.

14

Q What are the chances

15

numerically that the river crossing will be damaged
on those assumptions within 25 years?

16

17

A If all your assumptions

18

are correct, the probability of damage would be signi-
ficant. I don't have the exact figure with me, but it
is calculable.

20

21

Q Would it be roughly

22

22%?

23

A That could be right.

24

Q And I take it that that

25

is the risk that potentially at least is at stake if
one uses the 100 year figure on the Mackenzie?

26

27

A Accepting all of your

28

assumptions, which I do not accept.

29

Q All right, but even if

30

you don't, I take it the assumption you don't accept

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams

Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 is the assumption that a greater flood will necessarily
3 damage the pipe?

4 A That's correct. In
5 establishing a design for the pipeline, we would --
6 the minimum we would do, is try and estimate, even
7 though the reliability of the estimate would be somewhat
8 uncertain, we would estimate what the maximum flood
9 that could occur, and we would evaluate what this would
10 do to scour.

11 Q Well --

12 A So in answer to your
13 question, the total safety of the design is not
14 predicated on the occurrence or the exceedance of a
15 100 year flood, no.

16 Q But would you agree
17 with me that I produced the figure 22%, and you say,
18 "Well, that's based on your assumptions, and one of
19 your assumptions is that the worst flood in excess of
20 the 100 year flood will damage the pipe." You don't
21 buy that. That's why you say 22% realistically is
22 too high?

23 A Oh yes.

24 Q All right. Now would
25 you agree that the realistic risk would be, let us say,
26 10%?

27 A No sir, much, much
28 lower than that.

29 Q Well, what do you think
30 the realistic risk on this basis is for those river

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 crossings?

3 A I cannot place a number
4 on it. We're involving judgment here. All I can state
5 the risk in, is in qualitative terms and it would be
6 extremely small.

7 Q Well now, on the other
8 hand what we've been talking about is the risk that
9 results from a flow in excess of the 100 year limit?

10 A Could you state that
11 again?

12 Q No, what we've been
13 talking about in trying to fix this risk to your
14 river crossings, is what would happen if the flow
15 exceeded the 100 year figure?

16 A Yes.

17 Q Well now, I put it to
18 you, you and I don't agree on those figures perhaps,
19 but I put it to you that there are a lot of other
20 factors apart from flow that can lead to the damage
21 of a river crossing, such as slope failure on the
22 approaches to the river, or an ice jam?

23 A These are to some extent
24 independent. Certainly the ice jam, in the case of
25 the ice jam, you would need a combination of an ice
26 jam and the very severe or extreme flow, to cause
27 damage.

28 Q Well, wouldn't you agree
29 with me that whatever the risk that results, or however
30 you calculate the risk from the excess flow beyond the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

100 year limit, the risk is increased by the possibility of damage from other causes, such as bank failure or ice jams or what have you?

A I'd have to go back and examine my statistics, because these are independent events, to some extent.

Q But any one of them can damage the integrity of a river crossing?

A Conceivably, yes.

Q Well, I put it to you in short that there is, I make no criticism of it, it may be solveable, but there is a measurable risk attaching to these river crossings, leaving out environmental considerations?

A I would say that there is an element of risk; a measurable one, no.

Q Well, would you agree with me that in a report to Northern Engineering Services, Shawinigan Engineering criticized the choice of the 100 year flood that you made?

A The choice of the 100 year flood?

Q Yes.

MR. GENEST: Mr. Scott, could we have the exact quotation, please?

MR. SCOTT: It's the report of the Shawinigan Engineering Co. Ltd., I don't have the cover page so I don't have the date for it, but I can find it, at page 30 of that report in commenting

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Hardy, Williams
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
-Exam by Scott

on the criteria developed by T. Blench & Associates
in March, 1973, and in particular commenting on design
flow analysis or assumptions, the authors say:

"The approaches used for design flood estimations
to date could be challenged for being too classi-
cal and not taking full advantage of modern
computational procedures. It is suggested
that analyses similar to the one conducted
for Section 51 be carried out for several
rivers to determine whether more refined work
would be of value."

And then to give meaning to that you have to return
to the Section 5. Did you understand that? Perhaps
I misunderstood that.

A Their -- .

Q Have you read that
report?

A No, I haven't, sir.

Could you read that section again? There was one point
in it I don't think I did understand.

Q

"The approaches used for design flood estimations
to date could be challenged for being too classi-
cal and not taking full advantage of modern
computational procedures. It is suggested that
analyses similar to the one conducted for
Section 51 be carried out for several rivers
to determine whether more refined work would
be of value."

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

A And do you have Section 51?

Q I'm not sure that I have
it here. In 4.3 and 51 the authors say this:

"The important river engineering considerations
pertaining to buried river crossings are identified.
Of hydrological importance are the
criteria for design discharge selection. The
critical condition is assumed to be the 1:100
peak discharge,"

and that's the 100 year flood, is it?

A Yes.

Q But no justification is
given for this choice of risk, and then on the following
page, table 1 overleaf, compares flood estimates
from the various sources, which are a number of other
reports.

"It is noteworthy that Blench's estimates

tend to be about half those of the others."

Now I understood that to be an assertion that the
estimates on which the 100 year flood was chosen were
one-half the estimates that others had relied on,
Do you understand the observation in the same way I
do?

A I think I can comment
on it, and in many respects I agree. He is -- or
they are speaking of the design of river crossings
in general. Now, the project is undertaking to re-
evaluate --

Q I'm sorry, I didn't hear

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 what you last said?

3 A The project, to my
4 understanding, is undertaking to re-evaluate its data
5 on the maximum flows that would be considered in the
6 design. We have to keep in mind, of course, that in
7 some cases these maximum flows may not be critical to
8 design. It may be some other flow, and we have to
9 think of that particularly in regard to scour, as we
10 have to look at the maximum scour that can occur in
11 the entire range of flows that can develop in a river.
12 But I believe the type of analysis you're -- or the
13 report is getting at, is being undertaken right now to
14 generate this data, and it will be examined in the
15 final design. But we're talking about data here.

16 Q Yes, but I take it that
17 that data affects the -- for example, the place where
18 the pipe enters the river, where it bends?

19 A No, not significantly.
20 of it
21 There are several aspects/ the design/ definitely would
22 affect. It would definitely affect the design of
23 training structures and riprap. This is, of course, the
24 primary influence it would have.

25 Q Is it at least conceivable
26 then that you may retreat from these design flow
27 figures as you get further work done?

28 A Re--

29 Q well, I shouldn't say
30 "retreat".

A The actual numbers that are

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 shown on the preliminary design?

2
3 Q Is it possible that as
4 you get to final design you may develop another
5 design flow criteria that produces a different
6 formula than one in 100 years?

7 A I think it is quite
8 possible that the final designs and the descriptions
9 of those designs would include comments that -- to
10 the effect that, flows much in excess of this have been
11 examined.

12 Q Are you familiar -- I'm
13 sure you are -- with the concept of the standard pro-
14 ject flood?

15 A Yes sir, I am.

16 Q I take it that that's
17 a more conservative concept than the one, in 100 years?

18 A They are not comparable.
19 I've been involved with meetings, in meetings with the
20 corps of engineers when we were discussing matters
21 concerning design floods and there is really not a
22 way of drawing a comparison, an exact comparison
23 between a standard project flood and a --

24 Q Well, perhaps you could
25 explain for me what the standard project flood is,
26 what that standard is?

27 A It's rather arbitrary.
28 The standard project flood is, I believe, defined as,
29 a flood that is somewhat less than what they also
30 refer -- I've got to describe a maximum probable flood

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 to begin with. Maximum probable flood assumes the
3 worst possible storm conditions in a watershed, and
4 on that basis a computation of the resulting flood
5 would take place. The standard project flood assumes
6 a storm that is somewhat less, by I believe it's 40 to
7 60% less, or 40 to 60% of the maximum probable storm,
8 and the computation is based on that.

9 Q Yes, but what's the
10 return period of the standard project flood?

11 A There is no return period
12 associated with it. In some instances they have, that
13 I know of, where they have compared predictions it was
14 very close to one in 100 year flood. In most instances
15 I will admit it's higher.

16 Q In most instances it's
17 higher and I take it that in my terms that means more
18 conservative?

19 A That's correct, yes.

20 Q And indeed, it is the
21 standard project ^{flood} as I understand it, is the recommen-
22 ded design flood for sort of intermediate sized dams?
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchik, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

A Yes, where there is a possibility of risk to human life.

Q Yes. Well now, do I understand that the Trans-Alaska Pipeline river crossings are designed to withstand the standard project flood?

A They are, although having been involved in that there are a couple of points I'd like to describe. First of all, the --

Q Could I interrupt you just for a moment? Is it generally speaking so that on the T.A.P. project the standard project flood has been utilized?

A Yes, it has.

Q All right, and I take it that you participated in the design of that project.

A Yes sir.

Q Yes. Well now, and that design is more conservative than the design in the terms in which I used "conservative", than the design that is contemplated for the Mackenzie Valley project.

A With respect to the floods that are being used, the only -- it would not be more conservative in regard to scour depth.

Q Well, let's talk this way. It minimizes or reduces the risk of damage because it's a higher standard.

A Yes, but the standard in all instances that I can think of does not come

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

into the prediction of scour depth.

Q All right now, in any event that is the standard that is being used on the Trans-Alaska and we know the standard that is being used on the Mackenzie Valley proposal. Now you had some comments you wanted to make.

A Well, I tell you I think I've made the comment that I wanted to, is that although the pipeline is being designed in many instances for the standard project flood, where this value has a bearing is in matters like the height of bridge decks or the height of the pipeline where they've got an aerial crossing, because with flows like this your water surface is higher. When we make on that project computations of scour depth, in all instances I can think of we have found that the bank full condition or something slightly higher than that would be more critical for scour. So although many of the structures are being designed on the basis of the standard project flood, the scour computations --

Q Well, let me see if I understand. Why are you using one formula in Alaska and another in the Mackenzie Valley? Is it government interference or something? Why?

A This was at the point in time when we came onto the project this was part of the -- to my understanding -- of the environmental impact statement, that was agreed upon some number of years ago and it was the terms of reference under which

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 we worked.

3 Q Yes, to put it another
4 way, weren't you told by some governmental agency that
5 on the T.A.P. line you would design to the standard
6 project flood?

7 A I believe essentially that
8 that is true.

9 Q And that's what you were
10 told?

11 A Yes.

12 Q Well now in question
13 37 in Northern Engineering's response to question 37
14 in the Assessment Group's Report, you have determined
15 a design flow for the Firth River on the basis of a
16 relation between the channel width and the flow in the
17 channel. Have I got that correct? Do you want to get
18 the response?

19 MR. GENEST: Question 37.

20 MR. SCOTT: The response to
21 question 37.

22 Q Are you aware of any data
23 that would justify applying such a formula to one of
24 the channels in the braided gravel bed rivers unlain
25 by permafrost?

26 MR. GENEST: What formula are
27 you talking about?

28 MR. SCOTT: The formula refer-
29 red to in the response to question 37.

30 MR. GENEST: With reference to

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

the Firth River crossing?

MR. SCOTT: Yes.

A I'd like to point out that the rivers we're talking about at the time these flows would occur would certainly not be underlain by permafrost at the shallow depth that it would affect the river flow.

Q Well, how do you know that?

A On the basis of drill hole data that we have examined on braided rivers in Alaska, and I believe some in Canada.

Q Well, you haven't drilled the Firth, have you?

A No sir, we haven't.

Q How do you know about the Firth?

A Well, in the particular case of the Firth, I'd have to say we're extrapolating data from Northern Alaska.

Q So you're taking a bore hole that exists in Northern Alaska and assuming that if you did a bore hole in the Firth River you'd get the same result?

A For the purpose of preliminary design, yes.

Q What is the return period of that flow at the Firth River?

A I think I'd better give

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

an explanation to that.

Q You can certainly give
some to me.

A The design procedure that
we're using for a braided river does not consider the
flow that the entire river would carry. We must keep
in mind that we probably have, if we take a cross-
section of that very wide braided river, we're probably
dealing with maybe half a dozen or a dozen sub-channels.

Now, as I mentioned in the
direct evidence, the procedure involved selecting the
largest sub-channel within a significant reach both
upstream and downstream of the crossing, we would
then assume some very severe conditions that
sub-channel could meet with another sub-channel of
the same dimensions at a rather abrupt and unfavorable
angle, directly over the pipeline. This would result
in a scour hole developing downstream of that conflu-
ence. O.K., the problem then is to obtain a discharge
that this sub-channel is carrying, but not what the
river it's carrying. That discharge that we'd be
designing a sub-channel on is probably 20 or 30%
of what the river would be carrying at the same time.

Q Well --

A So there's no real
frequency. The discharge we're talking about here
can occur quite frequently.

Q So aren't we talking
therefore about a design flow on, for example, the Firth

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

a braided river, in the area from two to ten years?

A Yes, it might even occur, I think ten years would be high. We would get bank flow conditions probably more frequently than that.

Q Now, how do you calculate the risk not merely to the integrity of the pipe but to the environment that is inherent in choosing a design flow criteria that is of that range?

A Simply by stating that it's our belief that flows of much greater magnitude would present a lesser scour hazard. What we're doing here is predicting -- or is taking the flow we believe to be the most severe with regard to scour, and that in this case is not the very extreme flow.

MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner, I'm moving onto some other topic. Do you want me to begin? It's about five to one.

THE COMMISSIONER: No, I don't. That's my answer to your question.

MR. SCOTT: I'm meeting with various counsel tonight, Mr. Commissioner, and we will bear in mind your suggestion of yesterday afternoon.

THE COMMISSIONER: All right, we'll adjourn until nine o'clock tomorrow morning then.

(PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED TO APRIL 9, 1975)

347
M835
Vol. XXV

Mackenzie Valley pipeline inquiry:
TITLE
Vol. XXV 8 April 1975

APR 13 1975

[Handwritten signature]

347
M835
Vol. XXV

CA1
Z 1
-74M21

MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE INQUIRY

IN THE MATTER OF AN APPLICATION BY CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS PIPELINE LIMITED FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT
BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE YUKON
TERRITORY AND THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES FOR THE
PURPOSE OF THE PROPOSED MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE

and

IN THE MATTER OF THE SOCIAL, ENVIRONMENTAL AND
ECONOMIC IMPACT REGIONALLY OF THE CONSTRUCTION,
OPERATION AND SUBSEQUENT ABANDONMENT OF THE ABOVE
PROPOSED PIPELINE

(Before the Honourable Mr. Justice Berger, Commissioner)

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

April 9, 1975.

PROCEEDINGS AT INQUIRY

VOLUME XXVI

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

APR 14 1975

LIBRARY

APPEARANCES:

Mr. Ian G. Scott, Q.C.
Mr. Stephen T. Goudge,
Mr. Alick Ryder and
Mr. Ian Roland for Mackenzie Valley
Pipeline Inquiry;

Mr. Pierre Genest, Q.C.
Mr. Jack Marshall,
Mr. Darryl Carter and
Mr. John Steeves for Canadian Arctic Gas
Pipeline Limited;

Mr. Reginald Gibbs, Q.C.
Mr. Alan Hollingworth for Foothills Pipelines
Ltd.;

Mr. Russell Anthony, and
Prof. Alastair Lucas for Canadian Arctic
Resources Committee;

Mr. Glen W. Bell and
Mr. Gerry Sutton For Northwest Territories
Indian Brotherhood and
Metis Association of the
Northwest Territories;

Miss Lesley Lane for Inuit Tapirisat of
Canada and
The Committee for Original
Peoples' Entitlement;

Mr. Ron Veale and
Mr. Allen Lueck, for Council for Yukon Indians

Mr. Carson H. Templeton, for Environm ental Pro-
tection Board;

Mr. David Reesor, for Northwest Territories
Association of Munici-
palities;

Mr. Murray Sigler, for Northwest Territories
Chamber of Commerce.

247
M835
Vol. XXVI

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

APR 14 1975

LIBRARY

I N D E X

Page

WITNESSES FOR APPLICANT:

John Ivor CLARK
Garry Wood HOLLINGSHEAD
Edward Charles McROBERTS
William Alexander SLUSARCHUK
Norman Reuben MORGENSTERN
Richard H. COOPER
R.M. HARDY
Guy Leslie WILLIAMS
- Cross-Examination by Mr. Scott (cont) 3091

1 Yellowknife, N.W.T.

2 April 9, 1975.

3 (PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

4 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,
5 I'd like to suggest to you, and I think I have the
6 agreement of counsel on this, if you please, that we
7 should sit tomorrow afternoon from 2 until 4:30
8 in an effort to complete this panel. Counsel have
9 agreed that we should also sit an additional period
10 next week, and I think what we would like to do, if
11 I recall our discussions last night, accurately, is
12 to assess the appropriate time for an extra sitting
13 early in the week.

14 Some counsel are concerned that
15 the corridor phase ^{which} is contemplated by the Inquiry
16 Commission staff, should take place not following Phase
17 4 but earlier in the proceedings, that is following
18 Phase 1, and there are things that counsel wish to say
19 both for and against this proposition, and we therefore
20 would like you to ask -- we would like to ask you to
21 sit on Tuesday next at two o'clock in order to deal
22 with that single question, that is the staging of the
23 corridor phase. I think I have the agreement of
24 counsel with respect to that procedure and that time
25 and place, if it suits you.

26 THE COMMISSIONER: All right.

27 MR. SCOTT: As a result of
28 the, I have two matters that relate to the Aklavik
29 Community Hearing that should be dealt with, to make
30 the record complete. The first is a letter has been

1 received from the Commissioner of the Northwest
2 Territories dated April 8, 1975, and it reads:

3 "Dear Justice Berger:

4 It has been brought to my
5 attention that during the latter part of this
6 past week some questions have been raised con-
7 cerning the attitude of my government, the
8 Government of the Northwest Territories, to-
9 wards the Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Inquiry.
10 I have stated publicly both in the south and
11 here in the north my support for the Inquiry.

12 As you know, it is my
13 view that the Inquiry being held under your
14 direction is of great significance to the
15 future of the Northwest Territories. For this
16 reason the Government of the Northwest Terri-
17 tories is anxious to extend support wherever
18 possible to you and your staff, in the work
19 of the Inquiry Commission and in its hearings.

20 It is extremely regrettable,
21 therefore, that during the last few weeks there
22 have been a misunderstanding develop with regard
23 to our position toward the Inquiry, and parti-
24 cularly with regard to the extent to which our
25 employees would be encouraged to participate
26 in its hearings. The intent of any correspondence
27 to our staff and the subject of their parti-
28 cipation in the hearings was to ensure that
29 they would be aware that any views they expressed
30 except where they touch directly upon their

responsibilities with the Territorial Government, should not be interpreted as the views of the Territorial Government. This followed requests from our staff for our direction in this regard. Unfortunately, this intent was not clearly communicated in our correspondence, and a certain amount of misunderstanding resulted. It became necessary for us to send one of our senior officers to Aklavik to speak with our employees and provide them with our assurance that the Territorial Government fully supported their rights as individuals to testify before the Inquiry held within that community. I understand that this was satisfactory in clarifying our position as far as the Aklavik hearings were concerned.

In order to ensure that there can be no further misunderstanding of our position with regard to the Territorial Government employees testifying before the Inquiry, I have asked that our telexes of March 27th and April 2nd which dealt with this subject and which gave rise to the misunderstanding that took place be withdrawn.

Our employees are now being advised to this effect. Having said this I would sincerely suggest that our staffs meet as soon as convenient for the purpose of working out an acceptable arrangement with reference to facilitating the appearance of public servants

1 before your Inquiry.

2 Equally unfortunate, in
3 my view, was the statement from us that any
4 misunderstanding took place as a result of the
5 failure of your staff to keep you completely
6 informed. Although the events at the time
7 and the problems of communication with Aklavik
8 led us to draw this conclusion, subsequent
9 discussion and a closer examination of the
10 facts indicate that this was not the case.
11 We regret any embarrassment that this may
12 have caused either you or your staff. I trust
13 this letter will be of assistance in clarifying
14 the position of the Territorial Government
15 towards the participation of our employees
16 in Inquiry hearings.

17 In addition, you have my
18 assurance that we continue to attach a great
19 deal of value to the responsibilities you've
20 assumed and are anxious to co-operate with you
21 in any way possible to ensure the success of
22 the Inquiry.

23 Yours sincerely,

24 'S.M. HODGSON'

25 Commissioner."
26
27
28
29
30

Mr. Commissioner, there is -- there was also received a letter from a resident of Aklavik that in the ordinary course would have been read at the Aklavik Community Hearing. Through an oversight, it was not read, and so that the record will be complete, I would like to follow the practice adopted at the community hearing, and read it to you so that the record of the Aklavik community hearing will be complete, and then file it as Exhibit C-9. C-9 refers to the exhibit process that has been established for community hearing exhibits.

I am unable to read the name of the author of the letter. Miss Hutchinson would be able to do that, but she is a nurse at the Aklavik Nursing Station and she writes to you dated April the 4th:

"Sir, in looking at the sociological impact of this proposed pipeline, one has to look at the impact of change. With change comes adjustment, not only of the caribou herds or hunters, but of the hunters' families themselves. Adjustment is progress, but is progress a dependency? Change has come to this and other settlements in the delta, but not necessarily progression. Daily social pressures increase on the families and individuals as a result. The oil companies increase employment, but this increases pressure. Many families are splitting and drifting apart. Father no longer hunts on the land but goes out to oil jobs, leaving wives

and children to fend for weeks at a time. Who do they turn to? Excess money is earned, father returns -- what to do with this excess? Government supplies services and housing, so money is spent on liquor as there is time for parties, but little time to know and grow with the family. Sixty percent of total care is alcohol based at times.

Then there is the father who tries to maintain his family from the land, but animals are retreating so one travels further to trap and hunt. School is in the settlement, so mother stays behind. Father feels frustration as he can't be with his family. Trapping is becoming less and less, so frustration increases. This frustration is brought home, leads to disagreement and wives feel tension to work to keep up with the bills. There again, children are left to fend. This also brings problems, so what does the child see? Progression, no, only a feeling of aloneness, no place to turn.

If this is what it was like for parents who once would laugh and learn together and now drift apart due to circumstances beyond their control, what will the future hold for them, not knowing the ways? Our patient load increases, and drug dependency increases, something which was totally alien a few years back. Where do we go from here? More drugs and more disease, diseases never seen before are becoming

prevalent such as high blood pressure. Instead of
^{it}
 T.B./is now V.D. and D.T.'s. I only see change as
 a passer-by, but in this settlement one can't
 help but feel the frustration in trying to counsel
 a helpless but inevitable situation.

Sincerely -- "

and the letter is signed. And it's signed Nurse Parker.
 I would tender that as Exhibit C-9.

(LETTER FROM NURSE PARKER IN AKLAVIK MARKED
 AS EXHIBIT C-9)

THE COMMISSIONER: Mr. Waddell,
 I think these are students who have come in, and you
 might just assist them to find any vacant chairs
 if they are going to stay for any length of time, they
 might as well be comfortable.

MR. GENEST: Mr. Commissioner,
 before Mr. Scott commences, I had made a promise yester-
 day about some information with regard to the east of
 Fort Simpson route, and I find that we are still missing
 some dates, and I'm going to ask for your indulgence
 so that we can present a total package, rather than
 have it go in piecemeal, and if I can put that off for
 a few days, perhaps -- as I understand it, there will
 be cross-examination directed to those issues of route
 selection when the construction panel comes back, and
 perhaps I'll have that for you and my friends before
 that panel comes back.

THE COMMISSIONER: All right.

That seems to be agreeable to everyone.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. SCOTT, CONTINUED:

Q Dr. Cooper, I promised last night that I had no more questions for you. I'm sorry to say that I have one or two.

I refer to an answer that Dr. Clark gave at page 2364 of the transcript at line 17, actually beginning at line 9. Referring to crossing of the Bear River and the Mackenzie in particular, -- 2364. Question,

"Now has Arctic Gas carried out tests to determine whether those river beds are free of permafrost so far as the levels of the river beds that we are concerned with go?

"A Yes sir, we have conducted drilling in the beds at the Peel River, the Swimming Point crossing, the Point Separation crossing and the Great Bear Crossing.

"Q And those are free of permafrost?

"A Yes, within the depths that we explored, which is below the depth to which the pipeline would be buried.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

Either for you or Dr.

Clark, I rather got the impression from that question and answer that it was being asserted that the river crossings had been drilled and had been drilled below the depth to which the pipeline would be buried, and that it was on that basis that it was concluded that there was no permafrost. Am I correct or am I mistaken about that?

WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: Yes, I think I can speak to that. These holes -- test holes were drilled in those channels with the exception of Point Separation crossing, the test holes did extent to below the pipeline depth. Unfortunately, I think at Point Separation the holes terminate just above pipeline burial depth. But in each instance there certainly was proved that in fact there was no permafrost beneath the channels.

Q Well, if we can take them one by one. I take it that the Point Separation drilling does not go below the depth at which the pipeline will be buried, that's your answer with respect to that crossing, is it?

A I think so, as the preliminary designs show it, yes.

Q Now, dealing with the Fort Simpson amendment, I am advised that two of the crossings -- the Swimming Point crossing and the Fort Simpson crossing -- aren't drilled at all insofar as the alignment sheets indicate.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

A The Swimming Point

crossing has been drilled.

Q Well, there are going to be two crossings at Swimming Point. Are you saying both of them have been drilled or only one of them has been drilled?

A only the first proposed crossing was drilled; I don't think there are any test holes on the suggested twin or second crossing there, no.

Q I take it that that drilling at Fort Simpson at Swimming Point shows, is in fact a drilling that is on the bank rather than in the bed of the channel.

A There were some shallow holes put down through the bench which at times is under water, and therefore considered part of the channel.

Q Well, have you got handy the profile and plan view of the Mackenzie River crossing at Swimming Point?

A I missed the first part of that question.

Q Have you got before you or can you get before you the profile and plan view -

MR. GENEST: Is that the design drawings?

MR. SCOTT: The Fort Simpson

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

alignment sheets and design drawings. So much for
the mesmerizing quality of my questions and answers.

THE COMMISSIONER: What page
is that?

MR. SCOTT: It's page 1-A-0232-
1001. It's the second last in the book.

MR. GENEST: In the
Fort Simpson route?

MR. SCOTT: Yes.

Q Well now, Dr. Hollings-
head, could you look at the profile in the top left-hand
corner, I think it's on the centre line profile. Do
you see that?

A Yes sir.

Q Now would I be right in
assuming first of all that that profile shows one of
these deep holes we were talking about in another
context?

A It shows the presence of
a scour hole, yes.

Q Is that one of the
unidentified deep holes that Dr. Cooper and I were
discussing yesterday?

A No, I would not say it
was an unidentified hole.

Q Well now, I take it that
there are two drill holes that are shown on that
profile.

A Yes sir.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
CrossExam by Scott

1
2 Q One of them, the one on
3 the left, is not below the pipeline. Is that correct?

4 A Yes, in fact it is below
5 the pipeline.

6 Q It's not below the
7 deepest point of the pipe.

8 A It's not below the dee-
9 pest point of the pipeline.

10 Q And the one on the right,
11 however, is, isn't it?

12 A Yes sir.

13 Q And I take it that the
14 one on the right, however, is on the right east bank?

15 A It is.

16 Q And that there is no
17 drilling in the hole or in the channel?

18 A On the contrary, if you
19 look at the other two profiles, that is of the right
20 bank and left bank respectively, you will see that
21 in fact there are test holes indicated there which
22 are on the flanks, if you like, of that hole, which
23 indicate unfrozen material.

24 Q Yes, but I take it that
25 there is nothing in the hole.

26 A Well, there doesn't appear
27 to be one at the bottom of the hole.

28 Q In your judgment, is that
29 adequate drilling for the design of a crossing at
30 that point?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A At this stage of the
3 design process, sir, I would think it is quite
4 adequate.

5 Q I take it inherent in
6 that answer is the assumption that more drilling will
7 have to be done.

8 A That's possible.

9 Q Yes. I take it the
10 drill holes that are shown on the centre line profile
11 show that they contain frozen material.

12 A That's right.

13 Q Well, how is it possible
14 to determine from those drill holes that there is no
15 permafrost below the level of the pipe?

16 A It is the additional
17 test holes which I refer to which give us that
18 indication.
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr.-Exam by Scott

Q The additional holes you're talking about are shown first of all on the right bank profile, is that correct?

A Yes, Sir.

Q And on the left bank profile immediately above it?

A Yes, sir.

Q And I take it that neither of those drill holes go below the base of the pipe?

A In fact, one does sir.

Q I'm sorry.

A In fact, several of them do.

I think if it's helpful, it might also be pointed out that the mean or average annual temperature of the water in the channel there is approximately 4 degrees Centigrade, plus or minus, or Celsius, and that combined with the test hole information that you have before you would certainly indicate I think, to most people, that the chance of finding frozen ground beneath the deepest portion of that channel is highly unlikely.

Q Well perhaps I haven't made myself clear. I understood from the answer that was read, that a drill hole in the channel at this point, or adjacent to it, had revealed that there was no permafrost in the bed of the river. Now, just so I'll understand, will you point out to me the drill hole that you rely on to establish that point?

A I would suggest that the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

hole shown at station 35 plus 30 possibly would establish that.

Q Are you referring to the right bank profile?

A Yes, sir.

Q Isn't the trouble with that drill hole, first of all that it's pretty close to the bank and in the second place, it's not below the depth of the pipe?

A It is indeed below the depth of the pipe --

Q I'm sorry, I must be misreading. It's below the depth of the pipe at the place where the drill occurs, but it's not below the depth of the pipe in bed of the river, is it?

A That is correct. However, the indication from those test holes on the right bank, plus our knowledge of the temperature of the water and the flow of the water in the channel, would certainly would lead one to conclude that there is no, indeed no permafrost beneath the deeper portion of the channel.

Q I understand well that there may be other considerations such as water temperature that leads you to your conclusion, but I'm trying to pursue the question of whether there is any drill hole that shows that below the deepest point of this pipe in this channel, there is no permafrost. Now, do I understand that the answer to that is yes or no? I'm not clear.

A As far as I'm aware, I don't

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Soott

think there has been a hole put down through the deepest point in the hole.

Q And what we're talking about is the deepest point in the river channel or basin at which the pipe will be laid?

A Of the hole --

Q Yes.

A -- in which the pipe is laid.

Q And therefore, at this crossing at least, there is no drill hole which shows us the condition of the soil below that point?

A We have some indication from other data, not necessarily from the test holes shown here --

Q Could we deal just with drill holes, for the moment? I understand that you may have other evidence --

A Well --

Q -- but I'm trying to deal with the evidence that was led by your counsel, Mr. Genest, that there were drill holes that established this point, and I -- do I understand now that there is not a drill hole that is drilled below the requisite level at that point?

A At the bottom of the hole, probably not.

Q All right. Well, would it be fair to say then, that your conclusion that there is no permafrost below the lowest point of the pipe at

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 that crossing is not founded on drill hole data, but is
2 founded on other considerations?

3 A No, I don't think that's a
4 fair statement.

5 Q Are there any other drill
6 holes that you refer to?

7 A I have a feeling there may
8 well be, but I can't put my finger on exactly where they
9 appear. I think perhaps Dr. Clark wants to add a word.

10 Q Yes.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: Well excuse
12 me, Dr. Clark, wouldn't they be on this drawing?

13 WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: Not
14 necessarily, sir. Some of this has been done recently.

15 WITNESS CLARK: There was
16 drilling carried out at that site last year, I believe
17 in -- during the winter off the ice. It was the type
18 of drilling done, however, with a rig that didn't recover
19 samples. It was specifically directed to check for
20 permafrost, and one determines that by drilling resist-
21 ance. It was a flush type rig, so we don't have the
22 same type of soil description as we get from the type
23 of rig that recovers samples.

24 There were quite a number of
25 holes put down at this crossing, as I recall, and there
26 are no logs, but they did confirm our original impress-
27 ion that there was no permafrost there.

28 I can undertake, Mr. Scott, to
29 provide the location of those test holes. They were
30 recorded, but I can't recall them from memory.

1 MR. SCOTT:

2 Q Yes, my only concern is
3 that if there are other drill holes on which you rely
4 for this point, I would be grateful if you could identify
5 them in due course, obviously not today.

6 A Yes, I would like to empha-
7 size though, there is no soil log as such because it was
8 not possible to identify specifically the soil type.
9 It was possible to determine whether or not the soil
10 was frozen.

11 Q Thank you.

12 Now Dr. Cooper, if the holes
13 that were shown on that drawing were one of the holes
14 in the delta of unknown origin, about which we were
15 talking yesterday, I asked you to assume that for the
16 moment; if it were, first of all, it would be a hole
17 that would be of a depth that would be consistent with
18 those other holes that we were discussing in the
19 channels.

20 WITNESS COOPER: I'm sorry, I
21 don't understand that question.

22 Q You and I were talking
23 yesterday about holes of unknown origin that have
24 appeared in the delta channel?

25 A Yes.

26 Q I take it that this hole
27 or the dip in the channel that is shown on the diagram
28 before you, is consistent with the shape of one of
29 those holes that you've seen from time to time in the
30 delta?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 A Well the location and depth
2 of this hole of course is consistent with open channel
3 hydraulics.

4 Q Yes, but it's consistent
5 also, is it not, with being one of the holes that we
6 were discussing yesterday?

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A No, there
3 is really not that much, nothing unusual about it.

4 Q Well, let me just
5 review. You posited yesterday a theory that holes of
6 unknown origin in the delta channel might be caused by
7 the melting of ground ice.

8 A That would be one
9 hypothesis, yes.

10 Q And if that hypothesis
11 were correct, it would illustrate that there was
12 permafrost perhaps in the course of melting, but that
13 there was permafrost below the bed of the river.

14 A That in the course of
15 melting sometime in the past, in the distance past,
16 there was, yes.

17 Q Well, you couldn't judge
18 whether it all melted, could you? Without an exten-
19 sive drill.

20 A The best knowledge we
21 have on it now, based on drilling not only in this
22 location, indicates that under channels such as this
23 if there is permafrost, it's at quite a deep depth.

24 Q Now, Dr. Cooper, if
25 you'd look at the centre line profile that is called
26 "Downstream crossing", do you see that?

27 A Yes sir.

28 Q Yes. Now I understood
29 you to say yesterday in dealing with upended ice cakes
30 that they wouldn't create a very great problem because

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 the dimension of the channels usually meant that the
3 deepest point was in the centre.

4 A That the deepest point
5 is some distance from the bank.

6 Q Yes, and that was your
7 rationalization for the proposition that ice cakes
8 would not do any substantial damage.

9 A Not entirely, no. The
10 -- a part of that rationalization is that the depth
11 itself would prevent gouging of the bed.

12 Q I take it that this
13 diagram shows that the deepest point of the channel
14 is in fact adjacent to the bank.

15 A Yes, it is several
16 hundred feet.

17 Q Yes, and the detail on
18 the following page shows a similar configuration with
19 a depth, not in the centre of the channel but adjacent
20 to the bank.

21 A Yes, some several hundred
22 feet.

23 Q Well, isn't that a case
24 in which your rationalization in support of your
25 conclusions about the effect of up-ended ice cakes
26 runs into some kind of difficulty?

27 A No, I don't really think
28 so. We would expect that we would have, if you like,
29 some gouging attack on that slope.

30 Q Which slope are you

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 talking about?

3 A What sheet is this
4 here, the Mackenzie, the Fort Simpson?

5 Q Yes.

6 A O.K., we would have
7 to possibly expect some gouging attack on the slope,
8 let's say on the right bank. However, the -- you have
9 to realize the vertical exaggeration on this drawing
10 and look at the vertical cover on the pipe, and we're
11 talking in terms of eight feet of possible gouging.
12 What is the vertical cover in there?

13 Q It says ten feet, I
14 think, if I read it correctly.

15 A Yes, it's about 30 feet,
16 I believe, on that slope. Now, at the deepest point
17 on the river, at the deepest point on the river we have
18 to realize that these ice flows are floating. They
19 maybe up-ended but essentially they will be floating
20 in some 40 or 50 feet of water at that time, so there
21 is essentially no possibility of gouging occurring at
22 that deepest point. Yes, you could get gouging attack
23 on the slope, though.

24 Q Well, would you look at
25 the last drawing in the book, which is the next page?

26 A That's the one we've got.

27
28 Q Well then we're looking
29 at the same one?

30 A Yes.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Well, isn't there a
3 minimum cover there of ten feet?

4 A That's at the deepest
5 point, I believe. It's in that order, yes.

6 WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: The
7 design as it's shown indicates a depth of burial of
8 something in the order of 30 to 40 feet, and it would
9 not be less than 10. I think that there are other
10 factors which come in here as well. When I gave the
11 figure yesterday of an estimate of the maximum possible
12 depth of gouging by direct contact of ice flows on
13 the bed, we were assuming the worst possible conditions
14 that is a soft sandy material, and a maximum possible
15 size of ice flow. In fact, the banks of the Mackenzie
16 at this location are rather armoured with boulders,
17 etc.

18 Q Well, we can read the
19 diagram, but I don't understand why you say that the
20 cover is 30 to 40 feet when I see the figure "10" down
21 here. Now it maybe that I don't understand what that
22 refers to.

23 A Because it's shown as
24 30 to 40 feet.

25 Q Well, I may not under-
26 stand, what are the meaning of the words:

27 "Minimum vertical cover, 10 feet,"
28 which I see on that drawing?

29 WITNESS COOPER:

30 A Well, the minimum
vertical cover would be from the deepest point in the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 channel as shown on that drawing; but in respect to
3 scouring by ice flows, we have to realize that that
4 could occur only at the -- or that the size of flow
5 that could scour the bed or could gouge the bed, if
6 you like, is such that it would not -- it's small
7 enough so that the flow size when it was up-ended, it
8 wouldn't even touch the bed here, it would be
9 floating.

10 Q Well, let me ask you
11 this just so I'll be sure I understand. The words,
12 "Minimum vertical cover, 10 feet,"
13 appear and then there are arrows that show the point
14 at which that minimum cover exists, I presume.

15 WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: Maybe
16 it would help, Mr. Scott, if I suggested that probably
17 those words need not exist at all there.

18 Q I'm sorry, go ahead.

19 A They are really not
20 necessary.

21 Q Well, they may not be
22 necessary, but I read them to indicate the minimum
23 cover that will be placed over the pipe on that drawing
24 which is a representation of what you intend to do at
25 that crossing. Am I mistaken?

26 A Yes sir.

27 Q Well, is the mistake mine
28 or is it yours?

29 A It's probably my error
30 in leaving those words on there. It is an additional

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 qualification or restriction, if you wish, that is
3 simply unnecessary in this instance.

4 Q Well, do I understand
5 that it should therefore read:

6 "Minimum vertical cover, 30 feet."?

7 A I don't recall exactly
8 what the minimum depth of cover there is, over that
9 portion of the pipeline.

10 Q Well, I'm unable to
11 proceed with this line in that state of the drawing.
12 I'll just leave it and come to something else.

13 THE COMMISSIONER: Before you
14 do that, Dr. Hollingshead, we're looking at a diagram
15 of the crossing just south-east of Fort Simpson, are
16 we?

17 A It's about five miles
18 upstream of Fort Simpson on the Mackenzie, sir.

19 Q Yes. Well now, the pipe-
20 line is buried beneath the river bed and the drawings
21 show us the configuration of the river bed and beneath
22 the river bed itself we see the pipe. Now what is
23 the distance between the bottommost point of the
24 river bed and the pipe?

25 A It's approximately ten
26 feet, sir, at the lowest point in the channel there.
27 The distance between the lowest point in the channel
28 and the top of the encased pipe is about ten feet.
29 The depth of burial of the pipe, the elevation of the
30 pipe, has been established on the basis of the scour

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 calculations or predictions that were made, and that
3 has established that level of the pipe, and it happen-
4 ed that that falls about ten feet below the lowest
5 point in the existing bed, as it now is, that portion
6 of the channel. As it -- the unfortunate thing about
7 these drawings is that they are very much an exaggera-
8 ted vertical scale so that in addition to those scour
9 computations the additional recommendations that were made
10 were that there should be, let us say, a minimum of ten-foot
11 vertical cover and a minimum of 40-foot lateral cover
12 as the pipe comes up the bank from that point. These
13 have been carried over to the design drawings, but the
14 actual profile, if you like, and the actual recommenda-
15 tions of where any specific point on the pipe
16 should be with respect to the channel cross-section
17 you know, shown in true scale, would indicate to you
18 that in fact over that portion of the cross-section
19 where we referred to a minimum vertical cover of ten
20 feet as a minimum that should certainly be applied, in
21 fact the burial depth is of the order of 30 feet, sir.
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 But this would only show up most
2 clearly on a true scale, a true scale cross-section.

3
4 WITNESS COOPER: I think that
5 possibly some confusion exists, because I think we are
6 trying to describe the amount of cover that would be
7 at the -- over the region where you could get ice
8 gouging, sir.

9 O Yes, I under-
10 stand that, and your point as I take it, is that the
11 gouging is more likely to occur in the proximity of the
12 banks of the river, rather than in the centre of the
13 main channel?

14 A That is correct.

15 Q All right, I understand
16 that, but assuming that the lowest point, in terms of
17 elevation of the river bed is somewhere in the middle
18 of the channel, and it appears to be, at least looking
19 at the centre line profile of the upstream crossing,
20 you have only ten feet of cover there?

21 A You are looking at the
22 drawing on the right, sir?

23 Q Yes.

24 A At the centre, I think it's
25 closer to 20 feet cover by that scale.

26 MR. SCOTT:

27 Q Dr. Cooper, are you
28 referring to the downstream crossing?

29 A I'm not sure what crossing
30 we're on any more.

3111
Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams.
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: Well, I
2 was looking at the downstream crossing.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: I think this
4 is not as complicated as it sometimes appears to be.
5 Your argument is, your conclusions are, your professional
6 opinion is that the danger of scour is greater in the
7 proximity of the banks of the river crossing?

8 WITNESS COOPER: Now, we are
9 talking about ice gouging.

10 Q Ice Gouging.

11 A Okay. The danger of gouging
12 is greatest in the proximity of the banks. When we get
13 into depth like we are talking about and even in the
14 deepest portion of the channel as it now exists, we're
15 talking about depths of in the order of 40 feet, which
16 the depth of flow there is greater than the size of the
17 ice cake that could gouge, and this ice cake is floating,
18 so it can't possibly cut the bottom.

19 Q Yes, really I follow these
20 things. It was just the mathematics over the last five
21 or ten minutes that threw me off course..

22 A It threw me off a little
23 bit too.

24 MR. SCOTT: Well I'm not going
25 to pretend that I understand it.

26 Q Well now Dr. Cooper, if
27 you look at sheet 1003, which is two before that, Point
28 Separation the centre line profile upstream crossing,
29 do you see that in the bottom left hand corner?
30

1 A Yes.

2 Q Well don't you have the
3 same problem there?

4 A That's in the bottom corner?

5 Q Yes.

6 A Bottom left?

7 Q The deepest part is near
8 the shore, right?

9 A That's correct.

10 Q And in this case, we have
11 sandy soil in the bed of the river, don't we?

12 A That's correct.

13 Q Which is the optimum kind
14 in terms of gouging?

15 A That's correct.

16 Q Well now, don't you have
17 the same problem there that there may not be adequate
18 cover to prevent gouging?

19 A Well, in the area again, where
20 gouging can occur, and that is on the slope and fairly
21 high up on that slope on the right side, we've got
22 much more than I believe 14 feet of cover.

23 Q Yes.

24 A Or 15 feet of cover that's
25 shown. If you measure vertically on that slope.

26 Q Well just so I'll be clear,
27 if it's possible, do I understand that when you say
28 there is a minimum coverage of a certain amount on
29 the drawing, that you in fact contemplate that there
30 will be more than the minimum? Is that what you're

1 telling us?

2 A In terms of the preliminary
3 design what is shown here, we say 15 feet of cover at
4 the bottom, but if you -- when we apply the design on
5 the slope and have it 40 feet laterally into the bank
6 on that slope that's coming up, in fact on the slope
7 we would have something in the order of 20 or 25 feet
8 of cover. Not right at the bottom, but then gouging
9 can't occur right at the bottom. It's too deep.

10 Q Well let me turn to some-
11 thing else that relates to the Swimming Point crossing.
12 I gather from reading the transcript, I don't have a
13 note of it in front of me at the moment, that you
14 will be -- or the company will be excavating a trench
15 across the river to install the pipe and that the
16 trench will be in the order of 30 feet? I'm sorry, I'm
17 talking about -- I'm sorry, it's Point Separation
18 I'm talking about, not Swimming Point. Have you got
19 Point Separation in your mind?

20 A Yes.

21 Q I understand that there is
22 going to be a trench dug across the river that will
23 be to a depth of 30 feet --

24 A And in some places
25 greater.

26 Q And in some places greater?

27 A Based on the preliminary
28 design.

29 Q Yes. And I take it that
30 the trench will be dredged in relatively fine sand?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slsarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 A I think Dr. Hollingshead
2 can answer this better, it's getting into construction.

3 Q Very well, yes.

4 WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD:

5 A Yes, I think the data there
6 shows it's sand bed.

7 Q Yes. And I take it that
8 in order to dig a trench in that sand bed at that
9 location, you will need a side slope of one in six?

10 A I doubt it would be that
11 flat.

12 Q Well what do you think is
13 required?

14 A Probably something in the
15 order of 4 to 1, three to one.

16 Q Yes. Dr. Morgenstern,
17 would you be satisfied with that underwater?

18 WITNESS MORGENSTERN: Yes.

19 THE COMMISSIONER: Just before
20 we go any further, tell me what that means?

21 MR. SCOTT:

22 Q Would you explain, Dr.
23 Hollingshead, what one in four --

24 WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD:

25 A Four horizontally to one
26 vertically.

27 THE COMMISSIONER: So the trench
28 at Point Separation would begin at the bottom of the
29 river bed and would extend downwards 30 feet into
30 the river bed. What would be its width, taking into

1 account the slope on each side, on the four to one
2 ratio?

3 A Well it's likely going to
4 be probably 20 feet wide at the base and the better
5 part of 300 feet, I suppose wide, at the top.
6 Between 250 to 300 feet.

7 MR. SCOTT:

8 Q Well would your -- I'm
9 sorry, sir, anything?

10 What I'm trying to do is cal-
11 culate the volume of sand to be removed.

12 There are two crossings there.
13 Would the volume be two, being for two crossings,
14 times 2,000 being the length twice, times 900, being
15 the area?

16 A We had -- we actually had
17 calculated, based on these preliminary designs,
18 excavated volumes. I'm just trying to recall what
19 those figures were. It seems to me it was in the
20 order of a third of a million cubic yards.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: And that
22 would be --

23 MR. SCOTT: A third of a million
24 or three million?

25 A No, it seems to me it was
26 certainly less than a million cubic yards. Oh, for
27 the two crossings --

28 Q Yes.

29 A -- if the two crossings
30 put in at the same time, it probably would be of the

Clark, Hollinshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 order of a million cubic yards.

2 THE COMMISSIONER:

3 Q So two trenches at Point
4 Separation for two pipes?

5 A Yes sir.

6 Q Brings you to a total volume
7 of what?

8 A The two combined, we are
9 probably talking in terms of a million cubic yards.

10 MR. SCOTT:

11 Q Well how do I get three
12 million? You take two first of all, and then you take
13 2,000 and multiply it, being the length of -- or the
14 width of the river twice --

15 A I'm just trying to recall
16 what our actual figures were. We took a number of
17 cross-sections through each of those.

18 WITNESS MORGENSTERN: Mr. Scott,
19 could you inquire whether our units were in cubic
20 feet? Dr. Hollingshead is quoting cubic yards.

21 MR. SCOTT:

22 Q We're quoting cubic yards
23 too, Dr. Morgenstern.

24 WITNESS COOPER:

25 We did this calculation for
26 each crossing, and it seems to me in the first one
27 before the second crossing was drawn up, that the
28 first one was something in the order of a half a
29 million cubic yards of material.

30 Now, the second one, the way it
is shown here in this very preliminary sketch is
undoubtedly greater than that, so that the combined

1 total of the two is probably certainly in excess
2 of a million cubic yards.

3 Q Well, because there is a
4 difference between us, can we work out what the formula
5 is and then we can get some independent assessor to do
6 the mathematics?

7 Dr. Clark, you look ready to --

8 DR. CLARK:

9 A I haven't got my reliable
10 slide rule here. Someone has said, Dr. Cooper has
11 said 30 feet deep, that's ten yards. Approximately
12 300 yards wide. 300 feet wide, that's a hundred yards.
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

Q Stopping right there,
is it not wider than 300 feet?

A The width at
the top, I'm looking at the excavated trench.

Q Yes.

A Well, even if you assume
that was square and not like this, this gives you a
dimension 10 yards deep, 100 yards wide; if the width
of the river is then 700 yards or 2,000 feet, for a
complete square would only be 700,000 yards. That's
10 x 100 x 700.

WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: I'm sorry,
I think we're under-estimating some of the dimensions
there a little bit.

THE COMMISSIONER: 'I wonder if
this is a mathematics class that came in here?

A I've done just a quick
calculation on excavating a rectangular shape 10 yards
deep, 100 yards wide, that's 1,000 square yards in
area, by 700 yards in length.

MR. SCOTT: Well, the problem,
I think, has to do with the length.

A I took the length as
2,100 feet, or 700 yards.

WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: Closer
to 4,000 feet.

MR. GENEST: Why don't we
deprive these gentlemen of their coffee, sir, and have
them work it out over the coffee break?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott.

1
2 MR. SCOTT: Well, may I leave
3 that, may I leave the mathematics? There's obviously
4 a dispute that I for one have no intention of resolving
5 and simply ask you to state your formula for calculating
6 the amount of fill removed for the purposes of the
7 record, at the two trenches, how you would calculate
8 the volume.

9 A The
10 volume is calculated by taking a number of cross-
11 sections of the --

12 Q Could we just deal with
13 this cross-section? Or with this crossing.

14 A Yes, if you will let me finish.

15 Q I'm sorry.

16 A A number of the cross-
17 sections along the pipeline trench, taking into
18 account the bed topography that we had, and the pipe
19 parallel elevations and the suggested side slopes of
20 3 to 1 or 4 to 1, a series of cross-sectional areas
21 were computed from one bank over to the other, and
22 these areas multiplied by the length and then divided
23 by 27 to give you the volume in cubic yards.

24 Q And Dr. Clark, what is
25 your best estimate at the moment of the two?

26 WITNESS CLARK: About 3 quarters
27 of a million yards per crossing. If you draw a rectan-
28 gle and then put in that rectangle the shape of the
29 trench, you can approximate it by saying that the
30 trench is about half of the rectangle.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q So that --

3 A The 700,000 yards that
4 I get by that, by taking the whole rectangle over half
5 of the width, is not too far off.

6 Q And double that would
7 be, let us say, one million four, one million five.

8 A For the both.

9 Q Yes. Well now, when this
10 trench is dug, what's going to be done with that fill?

11 A Les, do you want to talk
12 on construction?

13 WITNESS WILLIAMS: The
14 excavated material in the river channel would be deposited
15 downstream of the crossing. If some was required for
16 construction of pads, construction areas on the bank
17 to fabricate the pipe to pull it into the crossing,
18 some of that excavated material could or would be used
19 for that purpose.

20 Q well, can you give me an
21 example of a unit that would occupy one million
22 five hundred cubic yards, what sort of dimensions are
23 we talking of?

24 A This material is not all
25 going to stay in place downstream of the crossing.
26 Some of it is going to move farther down.

27 Q Well, we'll deal with
28 what happens with it, if we may, in a moment. I'd
29 like to get some sense of what are we talking about?
30 Are we talking about a large quarry, or a small dam,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 or in terms of volume, what is one million 500 cubic
3 yards?

4 WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: Probably
5 the easiest way to visualize it is these diagrams that
6 we have in front of us. We've just calculated or
7 shown roughly the dimensions of the excavation and it
8 seems to me that those dimensions are the ones that
9 you're looking for, are they not?

10 Q Well, those are the
11 dimensions. I'm trying to make, if I can, for my
12 own limited mathematical capacity, an analogy to some
13 kind of ditch or hole to which I'd be familiar. Is
14 a small dam an appropriate analogy?

15 A Small is a pretty
16 relative word, sir.

17 Q Well, be more specific,
18 if you can.

19 A A small dam.

20 Q And I take it that the
21 excavation that -- Mr. Williams, did you have an
22 example that you were going to give me to make it
23 clear?

24 WITNESS WILLIAMS: I was just
25 going to suggest rather than a dam, a submerged weir.

26 Q You're beyond my
27 experience.

28 WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD:

29 A Well, I hope that you
30 weren't suggesting that or taking my response to indi-
cate this material that was being deposited downstream

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 was going to extend up above water level and create a
3 dam on the Mackenzie. That wasn't what I was thinking.

4 Q You're way ahead of me
5 in your responses to questions I haven't asked, Dr.
6 Hollingshead. First of all, I take it it would be
7 two or three times the volume size of this hotel.

8 MR. GENEST: Have you measured
9 this hotel, sir?

10 A I don't know.

11 MR. SCOTT: All right.

12 Q And I take it that that
13 fill is going to be placed in the channel on the
14 downstream side. Is that correct?

15 A Yes sir.

16 Q Well now has anybody on
17 the panel given any consideration to the effects of
18 doing that with respect to this river, and its life?

19 A I was going to say we
20 have given some thought to this, and that isn't the
21 only scheme, the only alternative.

22 Q Well, that's the alter-
23 native that you set out in your application, isn't it?
24 In your application, the construction plan book at
25 page 49 you say -- and I'm -- procedure "A", dealing
26 with -- which is the procedure stipulated for the
27 Mackenzie River crossing at Point Separation, you say:

28 "Spoil will be cast beside the trench on the
29 downstream side."

30 Now is that what you're going to do, or is it not?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchik, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A That is one possibility,
3 Mr. Scott, and I might point out that the exhibit, those
4 words that you refer to, were written prior to the
5 preparation of this dual design, and certainly what
6 was in mind at that time was the downstream crossing
7 and there we're looking at something in the order of
8 three-quarters of a million cubic yards, which probably
9 would have been for the most part placed on the channel
10 bed downstream.

11 Q Well, do I understand
12 that as a result of the twinning, you're not going to
13 do this at Point Separation, you're going to do some-
14 thing else?

15 A It's possible.

16 Q Well --

17 WITNESS HARDY: I think, Mr.
18 Scott, you should realize that there's nothing unique
19 in this particular crossing from the point of view of
20 the excavation, except the length of the crossing, and
21 you're going to have a little deeper burial than you
22 have at some other places; but these crossings are
23 going in across the Fraser River, for example, you see.
24 There have been two put in the Lower Fraser in recent
25 -- the last couple of years, one was in last year, and
26 there is a contractor's choice in how he makes the
27 excavation. It's possible, you see, to dredge the sort
28 of hole that you're talking about, and I think you
29 should not misunderstand us, that when we say, a three
30 or four to one slope, that that is precisely what will

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 happen. This is one of the intangibles that you cannot
3 predict accurately beforehand what will happen.

4 I get asked this question
5 very frequently by dredging contractors, and that may
6 be much steeper, you see.

7 Q The point that I am
8 anxious to make is not about the inability of engineers
9 to do this. I have every confidence that you can do
10 this dredging satisfactorily. I would like to know when
11 it will be possible for us to determine what you intend
12 to do at Point Separation with this large volume of
13 earth so that we can then begin to assess the impact
14 of what you propose to do?

15 A What I was hoping you
16 would take from my explanation, Mr. Scott, was that
17 we're tending to exaggerate the situation that we're
18 talking about here in relation to what is done every
19 few months on other major rivers in British Columbia,
20 and the fact, you see, that we may have 700,000 or
21 1.4 million yards in the two crossings, what we should
22 be concerned with is how much excavation have you got
23 per yard of width of crossing.

24 Q Well --

25 A And where does that go?

26 Q -- Mr. Commissioner, I
27 am really, I suppose, asking for some guidance from
28 Mr. Genest. I put the question to this panel about
29 the impact of the proposal that they have set forth
30 in their application. Their response to my question is,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 "Well, we may not do that. We may do something else."

3 I wonder when it will be
4 possible to know whether the proposal contained in the
5 application is going to be followed, or whether some
6 other procedure is going to be adopted, because there
7 is no point wasting any time as far as the participants
8 are concerned, analyzing the effect of dumping a million
9 and a half cubic yards of fill downstream, if we're
10 going to be told in the last analysis, "Well, that isn't
11 going to be done, something else is going to be done."

12 A I don't think, Mr. Scott,
13 there's any suggestion that we're trying to evade the
14 question.

15 Q No, no.

16 A What I'm trying to point
17 out to you is that you're grossly exaggerating the
18 difficulty of the problem, and now there are people that
19 can give evidence to the question as you've just put it,
20 what will happen, you see, and when will it be done and
21 what the effect of that is, and that involves environ-
22 mentalists, I think.

23 MR. GENEST: Well, I think,
24 Mr. Scott, what you're after, is what it is exactly we
25 intend to do with this 1 1/2 million.

26 MR. SCOTT: Precisely.

27 MR. GENEST: Our application
28 says we intend to deposit it down the river. It's been
29 pointed out that since the application was drawn up,
30 the quantities have doubled, and what is our present

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

stand? The only thing, I can take that under advise-
ment and let you know very quickly.

MR. SCOTT: I asked the ques-
tion because I am instructed that under the appro-
priate laws or ordinance, that volume of fill cannot
be placed in the Fraser River, and I'm concerned about
--

MR. GENEST: In what river?

MR. SCOTT: In the Fraser
River.

MR. GENEST: Oh.

MR. SCOTT: And I want to ask
some questions about putting it in the Mackenzie River,
if that is the course that is to be adopted.

WITNESS HARDY: ' Again, sir,
you are referring to total volume instead of volume per
yard of width, and it makes a tremendous difference,
and I would say you can get permission to place that
quantity per yard in the Fraser at some times, not
any day of the week.

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, Dr.
Hardy, can I ask you about the Fraser? The crossings
that were trenched in the Fraser, were they carried
out -- you said, I think you said the lower Fraser --
and unless I lost something, there wouldn't be any
ice, would there?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 A Well you see, you can adjust one
2 way to do it. This is -- on the Mackenzie, they pro-
3 bably would be placed in on the ice. At Hope, there's
4 one at Hope in B.C., that probably wouldn't be placed
5 on the ice. There is also one in the last year or two
6 at Shelley, which is up in the Prince George area,
7 and that could be placed on the ice.

8 But the fact is though, you see,
9 that from -- it really in a sense is irrelevant as to
10 whether they place it on the ice or whether they don't,
11 although the mechanics of what happens to the
12 excavation can be quite different. If you are using,
13 if you are digging in the open water, why then it's
14 -- you deposit it and it's not a matter of what we do
15 with it, it's what that river will do with it, amongst
16 other things, you see, and these things are predict-
17 able. This is not a unique practice is the point I
18 am trying to make.

19 Q Well --

20 A But there is no
21 precise answer in every foot you will get the same
22 result if you do the same thing.

23 Q You are saying
24 to us that this is a vast quantity of earth, but the
25 river is a very wide river, is that -- that's the
26 point you've been emphasizing with Mr. Scott?

27 A That's right. We should be
28 talking about the amount of earth we have to handle per
29 yard, because you see on the Fraser, on the lower
30 Fraser, there have been crossings put in where the

1 cover is 60 feet, more than we are talking about in
2 some of these cases here. And in that case, you see
3 the amount of spoil per yard of crossing is -- would
4 be more than would be here.

5 MR. SCOTT: Well, Mr. Commiss-
6 ioner, I would like to defer that until Mr. Genest has
7 been able to get us the alternatives that may be
8 adopted at this crossing. I don't want to pursue the
9 examination of a possibility that may not be now
10 intended.

11 Could I come to one other matter,
12 Dr. Cooper? In the evidence, there are two terms that
13 have been used in place to place. One is fossil flood
14 plain, and the other is alluvial terrace. Do I under-
15 stand that those terms refer to the same thing, in
16 your judgment?

17 WITNESS COOPER:

18 A Yes, they do in my judgment.

19 Q And that therefore, both a
20 fossil flood plain and alluvial terrace is a river
21 built surface that lies above normal flood levels, but
22 could conceivably be flooded under extreme conditions?

23 A Some of them could, yes.

24 Q Yes. Well now, dealing
25 with what has been described in the evidence as active
26 flood plain -- you're familiar with that term?

27 A Yes sir.

28 Q And do I understand
29 correctly that that is a river built surface that is
30 flooded or partially flooded when the flow in a river

1 exceeds what are called "bank full conditions"?

2 A Yes, that would be basic-
3 ally correct.

4 Q Now I would like, with
5 some trepidation, ask some questions of frost heave.
6 Dr. Slusarchuk, would I be correct in listing the
7 following four factors as being the factors, that give
8 rise to the phenomena known as frost heave? First of
9 all, unfrozen soil; in the second place, a freezing
10 temperature; in the third place, a susceptible soil,
11 and in the fourth place, the presence of water?

12 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

13 A Yes sir, that would.

14 Q Well now, I understand
15 from other evidence that has been given, that about
16 200 miles of the pipeline will be buried in unfrozen --
17 in a discontinuous area in which there is unfrozen
18 soil?

19 A Yes, sir.

20 Q And that that runs roughly
21 from the Willowlake River entry down to the border at
22 Alberta?

23 A Yes, sir.

24 Q I take it that because a
25 great deal of money has been spent on the dealing with
26 the problem of frost heave, that Northern Engineering
27 Services regard it, if unsolved, as a serious problem.
28 Would that be fair?

29 A If unsolved, as a serious
30 problem?

1 Q Yes. If there were no --
2 if you had not devised a solution to the problems of
3 frost heave, those problems would be a serious impedi-
4 ment to the construction of the pipeline?

5 A Yes sir, I think that's a
6 fair statement.

7 Q And can you tell me, just
8 in point form, what the consequences of the failure
9 to solve the problem of frost heave would be? What
10 would happen if you hadn't been able to solve this
11 problem, in point form?

12 A Well if we couldn't solve
13 the frost heave problem, then it would tend to heave
14 the pipe and possibly overstrain it and burst it,
15 that's a possibility.

16 Q Yes. Would, short of burst-
17 ing the pipe, would there also be a vastly increased
18 maintenance problem if frost heave were not resolved?

19 A I'm not quite sure I am
20 following you, sir. What part of -- what maintenance
21 are you referring to here?

22 Q Keeping the pipe in place.

23 A Well if you hadn't solved
24 the problem, how are you going to know what to do in
25 your maintenance? I'm not quite sure what you are
26 referring to there.

27 Q Let me put it this way,
28 then. I think your observation is quite correct, if
29 you haven't solved the problem, you don't know how to
30 repair it. Would it be fair to say that the integrity

1 of the pipe would be severely endangered if this
2 problem were not resolved?

3 A It could be in danger, yes.

4 Q Yes.

5 DR. HARDY: Incidentally, Mr.
6 Scott, that was not an accepted fact at the time that
7 the research program was developed. We didn't know
8 and so it is a mistake to go into this/concept that with the
9 at the time this research project on the frost heaving
10 was drawn up and funded, that we knew that there was
11 -- that there would be terrific damage to the pipe if
12 we didn't get a solution.

13 We didn't know what the effect
14 would be. We knew that frost heaving was a possibi-
15 lity, and we wanted to find out actually what it
16 meant in terms of the integrity of the system.

17 Q I take it therefore, Dr.
18 Hardy and Dr. Slusarchuk, that what you're saying
19 is that the consequences of failing to solve the frost
20 heave problem, have become apparent as you have
21 analyzed the problem?

22 A No, this is not so, sir.
23 I have been working in frost action in soils for many
24 years before this, and I recognized that one of the
25 problems that had to be considered was the effect of
26 frost heaving on the pipeline. There was no answers
27 for it in the literature.

28 Q Can I interrupt you, Dr.
29 Hardy, to ask if when you began doing that, were you
30 aware of the consequences of failing to solve the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 problem?

2 A No.

3 Q All right.

4 A We didn't know precisely
5 what the effects of the frost heaving would be.

6 Q Yes.

7 A On a line of this kind.

8 Q I take it then that when
9 the studies began into the frost heave question, a
10 question you knew you would have to investigate, it
11 became apparent that if the problem wasn't solved,
12 there would be serious consequences?

13 A Well, this gets into the
14 area of the results of the program and I will turn it
15 back to Dr. Slusarchuk.

16 Q Well, is that fair, Dr.
17 Slusarchuk?

18 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

19 A Could you state the ques-
20 tion, sir, you are asking me?

21 Q I understand from Dr. Hardy
22 that the consequences of failing to solve the frost
23 heave problem were not fully understood when the exam-
24 ination of frost heave as a phenomena began? Do you
25 agree with that?

26 A I really don't know how to
27 answer that, sir. I think I stated just a little while
28 ago that with frost heaving, if you didn't know how
29 to handle it, you could in fact endanger the integrity
30 of the pipe. That's certainly my view.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q Well, let me put it this
2 way. I take it it is only after your research has
3 begun, your research toward a solution, that you have
4 become aware of the serious consequences for the
5 integrity of the pipe, of failing to find that solution?

6 A I think we have been able
7 to quantify it more, sir. I'm not sure I agree that
8 we are not aware that there was a potential for
9 jeopardizing the integrity of the pipeline due to frost
10 heaving, prior to this frost heaving program.

11 Q Well when then, just so
12 I'll have it on the record, did your research program
13 begin in earnest?

14 A We started putting together
15 our proposal for the major frost heave study, some
16 time, April, May, sometime in May of 1973, I believe,
17 sir.

18 Q Yes.

19 A And I think people were
20 thinking about this prior to that time, and I can only
21 speak around that time, because that's when I joined
22 the company.

23 Q Well --

24 WITNESS MORGENSTERN: I think
25 I would like to add--

26 Q Dr. Morgenstern?

27 A Prior to the formal
28 documentation of the proposal, the problem had been
29 identified earlier and scenarios of differential
30 heave creating rupture if not resolved, clearly were

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 identified very early on, once we had recognized the
2 need to pursue this.

3 Q Well, perhaps I can ask
4 this question. Apart altogether from the proposal for
5 the program, when did work in earnest begin on models
6 that would produce solutions, or that it was hoped
7 would produce solutions?

8 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

9 A At that time sir, about
10 June '73.

11 Q Yes. Well now, Dr. Slusar-
12 chuk, could you describe for me, the worst geotechnical
13 conditions that one is likely to find on this pipeline
14 route that, define them by identifying them first of
15 all, what is the worst situation in terms of the frost
16 heave problem that one is likely to find on this
17 route?

18 A The worst situation would
19 be where you have a soil that has the characteristics
20 such that it would heave the most.

21 Q Well I take it then that
22 you are saying that the susceptibility of the soil is
23 going to make for the worst geotechnical situation,
24 is that correct?

25 A You are asking what
26 seems like a very simple question, sir, and I would
27 really love to give you a simple answer, but there are
28 a combination of things that have to be considered,
29 and that is the temperature of the pipe, the frost
30 heaving characteristics of the soil, the depths that

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 you bury the pipe, and so on, and all of these
2 things you have to put into your analysis to see what
3 is the maximum rate of heave or the total rate of
4 heave of one section versus another; for example,
5 if you wanted me to tell you which was the most --
6 the worst frost heaving situation.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q I withdraw that question
3 and see if I can ask you this. In this 200-mile route
4 what in your experienced judgment is the location that
5 is likely to produce the maximum frost heave problem?

6 A I'm not
7 sure -- do you want me to pin-point some spot along
8 the --

9 Q That would be helpful and
10 perhaps then we can identify the characteristics of that
11 spot.

12 A No, I haven't identified
13 that location, sir.

14 THE COMMISSIONER: What about
15 a stretch as opposed to a spot?

16 A Well, any soils that
17 have fine-grained characteristics we are consider-
18 ing to be potentially frost-susceptible, and you have
19 to know the temperature of the pipe there, how fast
20 the frost bulb grows, frost heave characteristics,
21 what depth you build your pipe, and when you know that
22 you can predict the rate of heat; and it's not until
23 I can put all those together that I can tell you whether
24 location "A" or stretch "A" is more frost-susceptible
25 or going to cause me more problem than stretch "B" or
26 location "B".

27 MR. SCOTT

28 Q Well, do I understand
29 then, Dr. Slusarchuk, that you're not able to tell us
30 from your work that stretch "A" or stretch "B" is
likely to be worse or easier or anything of that type?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A Well, what we have done,
3 sir, is that we are working to performance criteria
4 for heave and what we have done is developed an analy-
5 tical method to predict the heave. We have also devel-
6 oped -- we've got samples from along the route and
7 we've used our geothermal analysis to predict the posi-
8 tion of the frost front. From -- I've forgotten the
9 question; I got so worked up in my points.

10 Q Well, I understand, Dr.
11 Slusarchuk, that you have been working at Calgary with
12 the Calgary test-site, and the geothermal analysis
13 which we'll come to in a few moments; but I take it
14 that is it possible now for you to assist the Commission
15 by saying at Mile 150 to 175 the problem is likely to
16 be more severe than it is at Mile 250 or 275, or are
17 you simply not able to give us any assistance on that
18 subject at all?

19 A I'm able to tell you at
20 any place along that line I can predict the heave and
21 maintain it within our performance criteria.

22 Q Have you done that?

23 A For all along the route?

24 Q Yes.

25 A No sir, I haven't.

26 Q Have you done it in any
27 substantial stretches along the route?

28 A What we have done, we
29 have located our samples along the route in various
30 unfrozen zones, according to terrain type, whether

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 it's deltaic sand or a till soil, or something like
2 that, and we have -- we are trying in the first instance
3 or we are doing in the first instance tying in frost
4 heave characteristics with the terrain type, for
5 example.

6 Q Yes, but just so I'll
7 be clear, do I understand then that you can outline
8 a combination of circumstances which are likely to
9 produce the worst situation?

10 A I truly, sir, don't
11 understand what you mean by "a worst situation".

12 Q Well, you can tell us
13 that if you have this kind of soil and this kind of
14 temperature, and this amount of water present, that
15 you are going to have a certain result?

16 A Yes, if what you mean by
17 your worst condition, your worst situation is that
18 we might have to apply the largest surcharge and
19 bury the pipe the deepest, then I think we can tell
20 you, we can analyze that situation.

21 Q But I take it that you
22 analyze that, if I can put it this way, by reference
23 to the components and you've not charted it out on the
24 route of the pipe.

25 A We have identified
26 unfrozen zones along the pipeline route, and in the
27 first instance we have identified terrain units along
28 there, and we are getting samples from those terrain
29 units and have got them and we've tested them, and that
30 is one of our first measures for correlating our

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 information, or grouping our information. For example,
3 what is a heaving characteristic of a till compared
4 to that of a deltaic sand sediment, a finer sand
5 sediment that we find along the route? We have not
6 done a mile by mile design.

7 Q Yes. I take it that
8 you haven't also done, to use a river term, a reach
9 by reach design, or a segment by segment design.

10 A No sir, we have not
11 gotten into final design at all.

12 Q So that when in -- I
13 should read you first of all the response to the
14 Assessment Group's question 20 at page 20-3 of the
15 response volume. The last paragraph on that page --

16 A On what page, sir?

17 Q 20-3.

18 A Yes, I have that.

19 Q Yes, the last paragraph
20 about the eighth line from the bottom, the authors say:

21 "The amount of heave that the pipe can be
22 anticipated under worst conditions, and if
23 no preventive or remedial measures are taken,
24 is about six feet or a little more within
25 six to ten years."

26 Now I take it, stopping there, that you're not able to
27 tell us now where those conditions are likely to be
28 found on this 200-mile route between Willow Lake and
29 the Alberta border?

30 A I can't tell you by

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 milepost as per a mile -- final mile by mile design,
3 no sir.

4 Q No. Well now, just
5 looking at that answer, it covers some other matters
6 that I want to deal with, but before getting to it I
7 take it therefore that you're unable to tell us now
8 what percentage of the 200 miles falls within or near
9 the worst conditions?

10 A Yes sir, that's right, I
11 can't put a firm percentage on that.

12 Q Could you put even a
13 rough percentage on it? If you can't, say so. I don't
14 want to ask you to say something that you don't know.

15 A No sir, it depends on the
16 depth of burial that you'd have.

17 Q Leave aside the preventive
18 measures as defined in that sentence, the amount of
19 heave that will occur at the worst conditions, you have
20 told us that you're unable, because it hasn't been worked
21 out, to tell us any location or series of locations
22 where those worst conditions may occur. What I'm not
23 asking and perhaps the answer is obvious, are you able
24 to tell us what percentage of the route is likely to
25 be at or near those worst conditions?

26 A No sir, I can't give you
27 a figure on that.

28 Q Well now, you say that
29 at those worst conditions the heave, if no preventive
30 measures are to be taken, is about six feet or a little

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchik, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 more within six or ten years -- six to ten years.

3 A Yes sir.

4 Q Now would I be correct
5 in saying that the bulk of that heave probably occurs
6 within the first four to five years?

7 A Yes sir.

8 Q But in other words there
9 is a decline as time goes by in the rate or I'm not
10 sure I've got the right language, but in the rate at
11 which the pipe heaves.

12 A Yes sir, that's correct.

13 Q And that, I take it, is
14 shown graphically on a chart conveniently on the last
15 page of the Northern Engineering Services, "Results
16 from Frost Effects" study with which you're familiar.

17 A Yes sir, I have that.

18 Q And that shows, does it
19 not, that in four to six years you have come very close
20 to six feet of heave?

21 A Yes sir.

22 Q Yes. Now, you have
23 told us that in the event of one's failure to solve the
24 problems of frost heave, that one would be concerned
25 with a possible rupture of the pipe.

26 A Yes sir.

27 Q Do I also understand that
28 short of the rupture of the pipe, there is a bending
29 limit of the pipe which becomes, in engineering terms,
30 unacceptable?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A You have to ask that to
3 the stress analysis people sir.

4 Q I don't know who they
5 are.

6 A They're the next panel.

7 Q Oh. I see. Well, were
8 you given any guide-lines on that subject at all?

9 A Yes sir, we have been
10 given performance criteria.

11 Q Well, in the addendum
12 to the canned evidence of this panel at page 6 --

13 A Yes sir.

14 Q -- the panel says, and
15 I forget who actually read this paragraph, do you
16 have that in front of you, Dr. Slusarchuk?

17 A Yes sir.

18 Q The panel says, beginning
19 at line 5:

20 "As an example in general the amount of differ-
21 ential heave over pipeline lengths of 100 to
22 150 feet should not exceed about 2 1/2 to 4
23 feet."

24 A Yes sir.

25 Q Now I don't know who
26 answered that question. Was it you, Dr. Clark?

27 WITNESS CLARK: I read that
28 into the evidence.

29 Q Would I be correct as
30 reading that to say that at that point or within that

Clark, Hollinhshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

range, the acceptable limit of bending is reached?

WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: If you
read your previous -- the previous sentence there, it
says:

"With respect to differential heave, our
guide-lines,"

and by "guide-lines" that means our performance criteria
guide-lines,

"is that the pipe should not heave differen-
tially along its length such that the service-
able radius of curvature is exceeded."

And it is that radius of curvature that we are talking
about at that bend.

Q Yes, that sentence is
reduced to language that is more meaningful to me by
the sentence I read, and really what I'm trying to
establish, if it is so, is that the limit of accepta-
bility.

A That is the limit of
acceptability from a stress point of view, but that
is not the limit where you're going to start to buckle
the pipe. People on other panels can explain that
more to you, but the serviceability radius of curva-
ture has a safety factor built into it.

Q Well, what I'm really
asking, I suppose I can take the answer that is in the
canned evidence and do what I want with it, but
is it possible to reduce the margin that exists between
2 1/2 and 4 feet more closely?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

Is it possible to be more precise about that figure?

Either Dr. Clark, or you may know.

WITNESS CLARK: It would be
more precise with an actual radius of curvature.

1 Q What you're telling me is
2 you can't translate it into language I can understand
3 more precisely?

4 A Well we did try to make it
5 simple so it could be understood, and the two and a
6 half to four feet, I believe it says in lengths of
7 100 to 150 feet. You see it two and a half feet over
8 would be 150 feet/below our radius of curvature.

9 Q I think I understand then.
10 The two and a half feet relates to the hundreds, and
11 the four relates to the 150?

12 A That's correct, yes.

13 Q Yes. And that would be --
14 anything exceeding that would be generally speaking
15 unacceptable?

16 A Those are the bounds that
17 have been, that we have been told we should keep the
18 differential movement, not the total movement, but
19 the differential movement within those bounds.

20 As to the serviceability of the
21 pipe beyond those bounds, that would have to be spoken
22 to by the stress analysis people.

23 Q Well now, is anybody on
24 the panel able to describe where unacceptable different-
25 ial heave, including up to rupture of the pipe could
26 occur, assuming that there are no preventive or
27 remedial measures?

28 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: Excuse me,
29 sir, I missed the first part of your question.

30 Q Are you able to describe

1 the conditions in which, assuming no remedial techniques,
2 unacceptable differential heave and going as far as
3 rupture, could possibly occur?

4 A Well, we would try to esti-
5 mate the total heave along the route or along any
6 section of the route, and the maximum differential
7 heave that could happen over that length would be the
8 total heave, assuming that ^{one} point was not heaving and
9 the other point was heaving.

10 In fact, of course, they are
11 going to be heaving, like both points would be heaving,
12 and the total heave would not translate directly into
13 differential heave.

14 Q Well, is it possible to
15 give us a condition, an outline of the conditions or
16 an example of that unacceptable differential heave?
17 Dr. Clark may have something for you there.

18 WITNESS HARDY: I think Mr.
19 ^{you} Scott should realize that the guidelines that Dr.
20 Slusarchuk has referred to, he has pointed out a
21 very important distinction, that in the initial cir-
22 cumstance you're talking about a stress level in the
23 pipe, and he has said that guideline is not a stress
24 level that will produce buckling of the wall of the pipe.

25 MR. SCOTT:

26 Q I think what I am really
27 asking Dr. Slusarchuk for is the soil conditions.

28 A I know, but you see, you're
29 asking what are the conditions that will result in
30 rupture of the pipe. The system would be out of

1 operation before there was any rupture of the pipe,
2 by buckling of the wall, and if the stress condition
3 is eliminated, you get a permanent deformation in the
4 pipe, and this may -- it won't put them out of
5 operation, but can be objectionable.

6 Q Well, that's why I didn't
7 restrict my question to rupture. I said, is it possible
8 to describe the conditions when unacceptable different-
9 ial heave, including rupture if you want to take the
10 worst case, could possibly occur.

11 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

12 A We would relate that to the
13 total heave, sir. We would look at the situations where
14 we thought that we were going to have a lot of total
15 heave, and if in our judgment we thought that you
16 could get differential heave of two and a half to four
17 feet over a length of a hundred to a hundred and
18 fifty feet, then you could identify that, but if you
19 were predicting a heave such as six feet such as you
20 were referring to before, then it would be possible
21 to, in fact -- it may be possible to get differential
22 heaves of greater than two and a half to four feet.

23 . Our plan, of course, is not to
24 allow the pipe to heave that much.

25 Q Well, can you describe
26 a geological condition that would lead to that?

27 A Well we've identified a
28 couple of areas, there's sort of unfrozen area where
29 you just have heave along the pipe and you might have
30 a different frost heaving rate at one position versus

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 a heaving rate at another position. That could lead
2 to differential heave.

3 You could also get differential
4 heave say coming in and out of permafrost, for example.
5 In a discontinuous zone, you've got an island of perma-
6 frost, that you're coming through and the area adjacent
7 to that is an unfrozen area, where you have a frost
8 susceptible soil and that starts to heave, and we
9 brought up that point, sir, on page 6 there.

10 Q Well, do I understand the
11 position to be this then, that you're not able to des-
12 cribe any concrete situation in which an unacceptable
13 level of differential heave will occur?

14 MR. GENEST: You mean without
15 remedial measures?

16 MR. SCOTT: .

17 Q Without remedial measures?

18 A Yes, there's cases where
19 without remedial measures you could get differential
20 heave. I've already said, sir, that --

21 Q I think I am asking you to
22 give me a case.

23 A Well I have given you two
24 of them, sir. I've given you --

25 Q Would you mind repeating
26 them, they weren't clear?

27 A The one is where you go
28 from say permafrost to non-permafrost situation, and
29 that -- we brought this point up on page 6, and the
30 other is just when you're going along ordinary ground,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Mogenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 that's unfrozen but frost susceptible, and it's heaving
2 at one rate here and another rate here.

3 Q I take it that you're not
4 in the same way able to map, in any sense at this stage,
5 where those conditions are more or less likely to
6 occur?

7 A We have not -- what I was
8 saying previous, sir, and it was because you asked me,
9 was have we designed this more or less on a mile by
10 mile basis, and said what's the heaving rate here and
11 what is it there and what is it there, and we have
12 not done that. But we can go along the route and
13 identify areas that are unfrozen, areas that have
14 fine grained soil and frost heaving characteristics.
15 We can measure those and we have, and then we can
16 determine the rate of heave along those stretches.

17 Q Yes, but you're -- I take
18 it you stick with your previous answer that you're
19 not able to pinpoint any area where either the worst
20 conditions obtain or pinpoint any area or reach where
21 the -- an unacceptable level of differential heave is
22 likely to occur?

23 A Well if you're saying
24 without remedial measures --

25 Q Without remedial measures.

26 A -- well then yes, I think
27 I could.

28 Q Well all right, where are
29 those worse conditions in this 200 mile segment?

30 A The worst conditions would

1 be where you have a soil that is heaving very quickly
2 at, for example, say along the areas that might be
3 designated DL or RKM, and they are unfrozen, along the
4 terrain types.

5 Q Well, what I am really get-
6 ting at with respect to these/^{two}problems, and my friend
7 is looking at his watch, is is it possible to show us
8 on a map where the critical areas, assuming there were
9 no remedial measures would be?

10 If I can give you a parallel,
11 the rivermen, I gather, can tell us that this crossing
12 is likely to be more critical in terms of problems
13 than that? I wonder if it's possible, if it's not,
14 tell us. Is it possible for you to tell us in this
15 200 mile segment, where the critical areas are from
16 the point of view of worst conditions and from the
17 point of view of worst differential heave, assuming in
18 both cases, no remedial measures?

19 A We haven't gone through
20 that exercise yet, sir.

21 Q All right.

22 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
23 do we have coffee? I think we will adjourn then.

24
25 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED)
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. SCOTT: Q Dr.

Slusarchuk, the questions I've asked you all related to situations in the absence of remedial measures, and just to review and to lay the groundwork for some particular questions I want to ask you, I take it from your response to the Assessment Group's concern at page 170, there are basically four remedial measures that you contemplate in the face of frost heave. The first is deep burial, the second is the surcharge or the berm, the third is the replacement of frost-susceptible soil with non-frost-susceptible soil; and the fourth relating particularly to -- relating exclusively, I think, to cases where there is dual piping, is an alternating of the flow through the two pipes. Are those the four remedies that have been devised?

WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: Those are the four major remedies, yes sir.

Q Now, would I be correct in saying that apart from the work at the test sites, including Calgary and the other test sites and the models to which you have referred, there is no precedent for the utilization of these remedies in a case of a chilled pipeline traversing the kind of area that is found in this last 200 miles.

A I'm not aware of any.

Q Yes. Well now, Dr. Clark, in connection with this you gave evidence on the question of drainage problems, and as I understand it, there are

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 two potential drainage problems, the first is the
3 problem of surface drainage and the second is the
4 problem of sub-surface drainage through what we counsel
5 called the Carson Templeton Wall, which is the wall
6 formed by the ice bulb. Have I characterized the two
7 drainage problems?

8 WITNESS CLARK:

9 A Yes sir.

10 Q And I take it with
11 respect to surface drainage, the -- generally speaking
12 the solution proposed is a series of appropriately
13 placed berm breaks.

14 A Are you referring to the
15 areas where we have surcharged for frost heave, is
16 that correct?

17 Q Yes.

18 A Yes, that's correct.

19 Q I take it where you have
20 no surcharge, there will be no drainage problem at the
21 surface in your judgment?

22 A No, that's correct.
23 It's the spoil mound only.

24 Q Yes. Now with respect
25 to sub-surface drainage, I understand that the solution
26 proposed is the insertion of a pipe through the Temple-
27 ton Wall, beginning outside the frost-heave area and
28 ending up on the other side of the pipe outside the
29 frost-heave area.

30 A That would only be
applied where there was a significant flow which

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 essentially means an aquafer, the gravel bearing quite
3 a bit of water.

4 Q Yes, but in those cases
5 where there is what you characterize as a serious sub-
6 surface drainage, am I correct that that is the
7 principle solution on which you rely?

8 A That's correct, yes.

9 Q And would I be correct
10 in saying to you that with respect to the sub-surface
11 drainage solution there is no precedent outside of
12 the laboratories and the test-sites for the usage of
13 that device?

14 A I'm not aware of whether
15 that's been used for sub-surface drainage.

16 Q Yes, and I take it that
17 the only precedent for the berm break might exist in
18 a southern Canadian community, or a southern Canadian
19 pipeline where there is no permafrost problem.

20 A My understanding is that
21 berm breaks were used, for example, on the Pointed
22 Mountain line. Spoil mound breaks and similar methods
23 to what we have described.

24 Q I see. Apart from the
25 Pointed Mounted line, are you aware of any precedent
26 for that solution?

27 A I believe it's my under-
28 standing is that it's a solution on virtually all
29 pipelines, that they use these techniques.

30 Q What I was really asking

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 is in an area of discontinuous permafrost, are you
3 aware of any cases where this solution has been
4 used to respond to surface drainage problems over a
5 frost bulb?

6 A Not over a frost bulb,
7 but the -- several of the drainage measures have been
8 used in one form or another on, for instance, roads
9 and highways and forestry roads.

10 Q Now, Dr. Slusarchuk,
11 have you formed any view as to how important it is to
12 quantify the conditions along the 200-mile route that
13 contribute to frost-heaving in order to estimate the
14 amounts and rates of heave from place to place?

15 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: Yes sir,
16 I have.

17 Q And do I understand that
18 your quantification technique is the geothermal
19 analysis? And the terrain analysis maps.

20 A Plus the results of our
21 frost heave tests that we've done on samples along the
22 route.

23 Q Are you talking about
24 frost heave tests that you've done apart from the test-
25 sites?

26 A Yes sir.

27 Q Yes. When you say you've
28 done frost heave tests apart from the test-sites, have
29 you actually buried pipe in locations along the route?

30 A By frost heave tests, sir,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 I'm referring to the laboratory tests that we are doing
3 on our 4-inch diameter undisturbed samples that we've
4 obtained from along the route.

5 Q Oh, I see. What you're
6 telling me then is that your laboratory experiments
7 have utilized soils that are found along the route.

8 A Yes sir.

9 Q You're not telling me
10 that you've actually gone out without a permit on the
11 route and buried a piece of pipe.

12 A No, sir, I wouldn't do
13 that.

14 Q Too bad, that might be
15 one of the ways to find out some of these things, but
16 I take it then that your ability to quantify the con-
17 ditions in order to estimate amounts and rate of heave,
18 are based on the terrain analysis maps, the geothermal
19 analysis, your laboratory models, and I think to be
20 fair, your drill holes where they exist.

21 A Yes sir.

22 Q Well now, on the basis
23 of that material, to what extent and in what detail have
24 you been able to quantify those conditions to date?
25 As to rate and amount of heave along the route.

26 A We have sampled, we have
27 obtained frost heave samples from along the route
28 at different locations, and obtained average frost
29 heave characteristics for those soils, and we then
30 look at the line temperature profile, for example, to

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 find what the temperature of the pipe would be at
3 any location, and see what sort of rates of frost
4 penetration we would get and then translate that into
5 predicted heaves.

6 Q But I take it that at
7 this stage you really have been confronted with taking
8 only random samples along the route.

9 A Absolutely.

10 Q Yes, but there has as
11 yet been no attempt to quantify the nature of the
12 route itself as to amount and rate of heave.

13 A Other than through our
14 terrain typing.

15 Q Yes, other than through
16 your terrain types and your maps.

17 A Yes sir.

18 Q Well now, I take it that
19 it is obvious that in order to do that a substantial
20 amount of drilling will have to be done.

21 A We will have to do some
22 more drilling, yes sir.
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1
2 Q Are you in a position to
3 estimate the extent of the drilling that will be
4 required, let us say, on the Fort Simpson route?

5 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

6 A For frost heaving?

7 Q Yes.

8 A Are you talking now about
9 final design, sir?

10 Q As you move toward final
11 design, what is the rate of drilling that you will
12 -- that you judge to be required before this quanti-
13 fication can be done?

14 A We haven't established that,
15 sir.

16 Q I see. And I take it that
17 when you come to establish that, one of the things
18 you will know when you have established it on an area
19 or reach basis, is the -- and assuming deep burial to
20 be one of the solutions, the depth at which the pipe
21 should be buried from place to place?

22 Well let me put it this way --

23 A You lost me part way through
24 that, sir.

25 Q The purpose of this quanti-
26 fication, as you move towards final design, one of
27 the purposes of it, is to tell you, assuming deep burial
28 to be the solution adopted --

29 A Yes, sir.

30 Q -- the depth at which in any

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 given location --

2 A Yes sir.

3 Q -- you must bury?

4 A Yes sir.

5 Q And I take it you're a geo-
6 technician, but you're not remote from economic
7 questions, that the deeper you bury it, the more expen-
8 sive it's likely to be?

9 A That's right. To a -- it
10 depends how deep you're talking about. If you're talk-
11 ing about the depth of the ditcher, it's not very much
12 more expensive, to go to that level.

13 Q Well now, as you move to
14 that stage, is it important to know vertically and
15 laterally the heterogeneity of the soil through which
16 you are going to be passing over short distances in
17 order to predict heave, differential heave?

18 A Yes sir, it will be a factor
19 that we take into account.

20 Q Yes, well I would like to
21 show you a sketch that we prepared which to say the
22 least is not to scale, but -- and it's a sketch of a
23 speckled bog, and I take it that you're familiar with
24 that phenomena?

25 A Yes sir.

26 THE COMMISSIONER: It sounds
27 like a rock group. It wasn't very funny. Heterogeneity
28 is the other side of the coin to homogeneity, is it?

29 A Yes sir.

30 Q Are we using those words in

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 the right way, or am I?

2 A Well that's the way I under-
3 stand it, sir.

4 MR. SCOTT: I should point out,
5 Mr. Commissioner, that I had to experiment in the
6 pronunciation of that.

7 Q Now, just as a point of
8 reference, this is -- as a point of reference, a
9 speckled bog is found on the Fort Simpson new alignment
10 sheets, 1M 02001019. Well now, Dr. Slusarchuk, have you
11 done examinations of speckled bogs?

12 A We have considered them,
13 sir, yes.

14 Q Yes. Well now, I take it
15 that one of the characteristics of a speckled bog is
16 that it is overlain usually with peat?

17 A Yes sir.

18 Q Yes. Well let us assume
19 that to be the case there, and that let us assume that
20 below the peat is silt till.

21 A Okay.

22 Q And I take it that that
23 would be a reasonably typical analysis of a speckled
24 bog?

25 A We found that in several places.

26 Q Yes. And because it's a
27 bog, the water is -- or the water table is pretty well
28 at ground level?

29 A Yes, sir.

30 Q And do you see the water

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Mogenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 table there?

2 A Yes I do.

3 MR. GENEST: Could you show it
4 to me, Mr. Scott?

5 MR. SCOTT:

6 Q Am I right, Dr. Slusarchuk,
7 that appears to be peat indicating below that line
8 into the depth, and this appears to be silt indicated
9 below as it is shown and that would be a typical
10 example of a configuration in a speckled bog, would
11 it?

12 A I'm not sure how typical
13 it is, but you can -- I imagine you could find it,
14 all right.

15 Q You wouldn't be surprised
16 to see that?

17 A No, I don't think so.

18 Q And the ground table in
19 this example is at the top of the peat?

20 A Yes sir.

21 Q And I take it that that
22 would be --

23 MR. GENEST: Did you mean the
24 water table or the ground table?

25 MR. SCOTT: I'm sorry, I meant
26 the water table.

27 Q And that that would not be
28 an untypical situation?

29 A No, that is correct, sir.

30 Q And the dotted line that is

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Copper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 shown on both sides of the diagram is the line of
2 permafrost?

3 A Yes, sir.

4 Q Distinguishing frozen from
5 unfrozen?

6 A The other way around, sir.

7 Q I'm sorry, I had my fingers
8 in the wrong place. Unfrozen on the bog side and
9 frozen outside?

10 A Yes, sir.

11 I see a lot of red marks along
12 there sir, I can't see them from here.

13 Q That's your pipe and we
14 will be coming to that in a minute.

15 A Okay.

16 Q I want to ask you about
17 the qualities of those two kinds of soil from the
18 point of view of frost susceptibility. What do you
19 say about silt till?

20 A Silty till would have a
21 low shut-off pressure.

22 Q Would you characterize --
23 I suppose that teaches me for asking an open-ended
24 question, but would you characterize a silty till as
25 one that is or is not frost susceptible?

26 A Our position, sir, is you
27 can't classify a soil as frost susceptible or non-
28 frost susceptible, unless you talk about the pressures.
29 This was part of the thrust of my show that I put on
30 the other day, or whatever you want to call it.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q Let's deal with those
2 pressures. Where are the frost susceptible soils in
3 that diagram, if any?

4 A The silty till would be more
5 frost susceptible than the peat.

6 Q Well now, it's hard to see
7 the red lines -- it's hard to see the red line, but
8 stand up and come over if you can't, the top red line
9 is designed to signify the bottom of the pipe. The
10 dotted red lines that appear below it are the bottom
11 of the frost bulb as it develops at one year, at two
12 year and at ten years, and recognizing that that is
13 not to scale, would that be a reasonable configuration?

14 A I don't think the position
15 of the frost bulbs are very good.

16 Q Well then, where would you
17 put them?

18 A Well I think it would pene-
19 trate down a little bit faster in the earlier years.

20 Q All right. Well then do I
21 understand then that you think a frost bulb would
22 proportionately move to 20 feet more quickly than is
23 shown in this particular sketch?

24 A Yes, sir. The position of
25 the first year to the second year, the first year
26 would be closer to the second year than is shown
27 there.

28 Q All right. Now, Dr.
29 Slusarchuk, would you agree with me that that diagram
30 with water at the surface, represents one of the

1 worst cases?

2 A Excuse me sir, could you say
3 that again?

4 Q Would you agree with me
5 that that diagram with water at the surface, represents
6 one of the worst cases?

7 A It represents the worst
8 case from the water point of view, yes.

9 Q Could you describe for us,
10 how if at all, differential heave would occur in that
11 diagramatic example?

12 A Should I go up there?

13 Q Yes, if it's easier for
14 you.

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A Well, you will not be
3 heaving in this area.

4 Q You're indicating the
5 peat area.

6 A Indicating the peat,
7 yes.

8 Q And why is that?

9 A Because it doesn't have
10 -- it has a very low shut-off pressure, a little bit
11 of overburden pressure will stop that from heaving.

12 Q Yes?

13 A It won't be heaving over
14 ~~here~~, and again I'm indicating the peat. It will tend
15 to heave in that zone there.

16 Q Well all right, could
17 I stop you there and ask you a question? I take it
18 the frost bulb will form more or less uniformly across
19 that diagram.

20 A No, I don't think that's
21 true.

22 Q All right, what do you
23 think?

24 A I think the frost will
25 penetrate faster here than it will on the peat.

26 Q You're indicating that
27 the frost bulb will grow faster in the silt till than
28 in the peat.

29 A Yes sir.

30 Q Yes. Now when you're

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 saying the frost heave is more likely to occur in the
3 silt till than in the peat, I take it what you're
4 saying is that lensing is more likely to occur at the
5 frontier of the bulb in till than in peat.

6 A Yes sir.

7 Q Is differential heave
8 going to occur at that point, at any point of frozen-
9 unfrozen contact?

10 A Yes sir, right in
11 through here.

12 Q Well now, I take it that
13 that is a case at which some remedial measures will
14 have to be taken.

15 A We'd have to analyze
16 it first, sir, but it certainly is an area of potential.

17 Q Well, what is the
18 remedial measure that you would contemplate as being
19 a typical response to that problem?

20 A We could bury it a
21 little deeper, or we could put a surcharge on it, sir.

22 Q Yes. Well now, Dr.
23 Slusarchuk, this is a sketch, obviously, drawn by
24 very amateur hands. Don't you agree with me that
25 in order to determine what is going to happen in that
26 piece of ground, you have to have a very clear under-
27 standing of what's under the surface in some substantial
28 detail?

29 A If you were interested
30 in accurately predicting the heave along there then you

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 would, yes.

3 Q And aren't you interested
4 in doing that?

5 A To a certain degree, sir,
6 but we plan to monitor the performance of our pipeline
7 and from that point of view we would actually have
8 a measure of what heave was going on.

9 Q Well, you have said that
10 you're going to monitor the performance of your pipe-
11 line, do I understand, however, that you propose
12 to build a pipeline in which the problems associated
13 with frost heave will not occur, that that is your
14 intention? Or are you going to build a pipeline in
15 which frost heave will occur and it will be remedied
16 subsequently?

17 A We would initially build
18 a pipeline and apply our preventative measures at the
19 time that we were constructing the pipeline. We'd
20 monitor, and if at some time in the future we were
21 seeing heave, different than what we thought we were
22 going to get, then we would have to remedy that at a
23 future date, of course.

24 Q Well, I take it that
25 there is a difference of technique involved, that
26 is it the position of Northern Engineering that they
27 propose to take all precautions to ensure during
28 construction, to ensure that frost heave will not
29 occur?

30 A We're not trying to

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 ensure that frost heave isn't going to occur, sir.
3 We're trying to ensure that frost heave is not going
4 to occur to such an extent^{as} to exceed the serviceability
5 limit of the pipe.

6 Q Yes, so am I correct
7 in saying that the position is that you are going to
8 design a response to frost heave that will first of
9 all ensure the integrity of the pipe?

10 A Yes, sir, that's what
11 we're --

12 Q Yes, and that even in
13 those circumstances, and with that kind of design,
14 frost heave may occur.

15 A Frost heave will occur,
16 yes.

17 Q And that the response to
18 -- and that you anticipate it occurring.

19 A We anticipate frost
20 heaving to occur.

21 Q So that your design after
22 construction is based on an anticipation that frost
23 heave will occur in the next five or six years, from
24 location to location.

25 A After the pipe goes
26 into operation and we have put on preventative measures,
27 we are still going to get frost heave. Is that what
28 you were asking?

29 Q Well, it seems to me that
30 it's a question of design technique. I may be wrong

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 because I'm a neophyte, but it seems to me that it's
3 a question of design technique, you are either going to
4 design the pipe and the remedial measures to rule out
5 for all practical purposes the occurrence of frost
6 heave by placing your over-burden during construction.
7 That's one possibility, isn't it?

8 A We don't have to
9 eliminate frost heave, sir. We only have to keep frost
10 heave down to -- to use our example -- 2 1/2 to 4 feet
11 within a length of 100 to 150 feet.

12 Q Yes, that's --

13 THE COMMISSIONER: That's the
14 differential, is it, that you're talking about?

15 MR. SCOTT: Yes.

16 A That's the differential
17 heave.

18 Q You don't have to elimina-
19 te frost heave for the purposes of ensuring the integ-
20 rity of your pipe.

21 A That's correct.

22 Q All right, well I'm not
23 concerned about frost heave in that context. I'm sure
24 that Northern Engineering will devise ways of looking
25 after the integrity of its pipe; but I take it that
26 what you are saying to me is that your design of deep
27 burial or berms will be such a design that it will
28 ensure the integrity of the pipe first of all.

29 A Yes sir.

30 Q But it will anticipate

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 that following construction there will be from place
3 to place frost heave.

4 A There will be frost
5 heave. Now, this doesn't -- I'm not sure whether
6 you're asking whether that means we'll go to do remedial
7 measures from place to place, we're anticipating that.

8 Q Well, that's what I'm
9 getting at, and that your remedy for that frost heave
10 is to observe and come in and apply extra overburden
11 as required.

12 A We are now talking about
13 a substantial amount of frost heave.

14 Q Yes.

15 A Not just frost heave,
16 and then these will be very localized cases.

17 Q But I take it, I take
18 it, Dr. Slusarchuk, that it is possible as a design
19 matter -- I'm not saying it's the preferred way -- but
20 it's possible as a design matter to construct your
21 pipe, bury it at a given depth, apply a calculated
22 overburden, which will effectively prevent frost heave
23 above the berm.

24 A We seem to get in the
25 same position, you keep saying there's no frost heave
26 and I keep telling you that we're going to have frost
27 heave.

28 Q Well, I meant heave of
29 the pipe, I'm sorry. I meant heave of the pipe.

30 A Well, we're going to get

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchik, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 heave of the pipe, and that's part of our design.
3 We're not stopping or eliminating all frost heave,
4 we're just keeping it within limits.

5 Q Yes, and the remedy that
6 is contemplated in your design is inspection and the
7 placement of overburden at various periods of time
8 as required.

9 A Yes sir. If we didn't put
10 enough on to start with, and we monitored and we found
11 that it was starting to heave too fast, then we would
12 go in and do what you're suggesting.

13 Q Yes, but do I understand
14 you to say that you don't intend to put on the optimum
15 amount that will prevent the pipe heaving up?

16 A No sir.

17 Q Are you intending to
18 maximize the berm so that at the conclusion of construc-
19 tion you will be able to say, "This pipe should not
20 move."

21 A You've got two questions
22 in there and you keep saying the pipe isn't going to
23 move. We can except the pipe moving, and maybe you
24 could break up your questions one at a time so I can
25 answer them one at a time.

26 Q Well, I take it that one
27 of the remedies proposed to prevent the pipe moving
28 is deep burial.

29 MR. GENEST: Excuse me, Mr.
30 Commissioner, but my friend keeps repeating "to prevent

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 the pipe from moving" and the witness keeps saying
3 "the pipe is going to move". The real question is
4 a differential move or a move beyond acceptable limits.

5 MR. SCOTT: All right, let me
6 rephrase it.

7 Q I take it that your
8 remedy to prevent differ-- unacceptable differential
9 movement is one deep burial, or two, the addition of
10 a berm.

11 A That's correct, sir.

12 Q Yes, and I take it that
13 you are not designing the placement of the pipe on the
14 basis that at the conclusion of construction you will
15 be able to say, "This pipe will not move beyond
16 acceptable limits".

17 A We're going to attempt
18 to do that but in case the ground has been different
19 in some cases than we anticipated, we are going to
20 monitor and that will tell us whether or not we need
21 to go in again. But we are planning to go through,
22 construct and put a proper depth to the pipe and a
23 proper berm so that we're not throwing the problem
24 over to the maintenance people, to say, "You keep
25 adding more berm on there to keep the pipe down"
26 we're going to run through our calculations and our
27 analysis, and if say we're going to need a certain
28 amount of overburden and a certain depth of pipe in
29 order to keep the differential heave at a certain
30 level, that's what we're going to do.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q All right, so you should
3 be able to say at the conclusion of your work, assuming
4 the construction people do what you tell them, that
5 "We do not anticipate the necessity of adding more
6 overburden."

7 A We can't say we don't
8 anticipate it, because if we didn't anticipate it
9 why would we go to all the trouble of monitoring it?
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Q Well, I think that's a
2 fairly crucial point. At what rate do you anticipate?
3 Obviously, you can -- it's quite conceivable that you
4 can design a line in which you bury at a certain level,
5 and overburden at a certain level, and in which you
6 anticipate, they may be economic, but major remedial
7 steps.

8 I take it from what you say that
9 what you're doing, is you're saying under ordinary
10 circumstances, we're going to build this so that it
11 would not -- and bury it and overburden it where re-
12 quired, so that it will not move within --without
13 the acceptable limits, and that we're going to monitor
14 just to be sure that we were right?

15 A That's correct, and to allow
16 us to take remedial measures if we were wrong.

17 Q Yes, and if you are totally
18 right, the number of remedial measures will be very,
19 very small?

20 A That is correct.

21 Q Well now, don't you agree
22 with me that in approaching that speckled bog complex,
23 you really -- in order to determine the depth of burial,
24 or the overburden required, you are going to have to
25 do an indepth analysis of that phenomena as it
26 appears?

27 A As we go across speckled
28 bogs, we are going to analyze it and do it in depth,
29 that's correct.

30 Q Well, are you going to do

1 test excavations at sites like that?

2 A We are going to have the
3 ditch.

4 Q Well I know you are going
5 to have the ditch, but -- and we'll come to whether
6 when you have the ditch it's too late, but are you
7 going to do test excavations before you have the ditch?

8 A Well, we will put down bore
9 holes along there and get some samples.

10 Q You intend to do bore
11 holes?

12 A Yes sir.

13 Q Do you intend to part from
14 bore holes to do a test excavation at any site?

15 A Not at the moment sir, we
16 don't have that plan.

17 Q Allright. Well now, in a
18 situation like that, how closely spaced would you
19 anticipate the bore holes will be?

20 A Well, this is sort of a
21 matter that we were going to be determining in final
22 design, exactly how close we're going to be requiring
23 bore holes. We haven't determined that at this time,
24 sir.

25 Q Well now --

26 WITNESS MORGENSTERN: May I add
27 a point here? We would also make use of geophysical
28 techniques to profile, so that you are not fully relied
29 on just bore holes.

30 MR. SCOTT:

1 Q I'm not sure that I under-
2 stand what you mean by geophysical techniques?

3 A Seismic and electrical
4 resistivity profiling and other sensing devices that
5 will pick up the silt till contour without actually
6 having to put a hole down every ten feet.

7 Q Well now, on page 15 of
8 the canned evidence for this panel, this answer is
9 provided: "The site specific drilling will be com-
10 pleted in sufficient time to allow detailed specifi-
11 cations to be prepared for all facilities. It is
12 not expected that a great deal of additional drilling
13 would be required for the pipeline route itself, as
14 the terrain typing and the verification test drilling
15 would prove adequate for most of the final mile by
16 mile design".

17 Now, do I understand that this
18 kind of example is a case in which Northern Engineering
19 will want to do fairly extensive test drilling before
20 final design?

21 WITNESS CLARK:

22 A We are continuing now with
23 test drilling to broaden the data base that we have
24 for different soil types, but in a situation like this,
25 we would attempt to optimize the test drilling by the
26 use of a geophysical survey.

27 Q What concerns me about the
28 problem is the assertion by -- in the recorded answers,
29 which I read to say that the drilling program is sub-
30 stantially finished, it is not expected that a great

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam.by Scott

1 deal of additional drilling will be required.

2 A No sir, we are talking
3 about two things here. One is the site specific
4 drilling, and the site specific drilling would relate
5 to such things as slopes, areas of complex terrain,
6 relative to frost heave such as you have illustrated --

7 Q Yes.

8 A -- specific sites for
9 compressor stations and so on.

10 Q Well, would the answer in
11 the canned evidence then have been more accurate if
12 it had indicated your intention to do, in particular
13 sites, reasonably extensive drilling before final design?

14 A The intensive drilling
15 would be in localized areas.

16 Q But I take, and this would
17 be one of them?

18 A This could be one of them.
19 We have recently done some drilling at similar sites
20 to this already.

21 Q Well I put it to you, Dr.
22 Clark, and it seems to me that this may be what you
23 intend, that there will be a substantial number of
24 sites along -- I'm talking about the 200 mile section
25 now, in which you will require very substantial drill-
26 ing in particular sites?

27 A That's correct, yes.

28 Q Yes. And it would be
29 correct, therefore, to say that when you come to
30 difficult situations in the final design stage, there

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 will be an extensive drilling program to determine the
2 nature, precisely what is underneath the ground over
3 which you must cross?

4 A At specific sites, yes.

5 Q Now, you referred, or Dr.
6 Morgenstern referred, to geophysical techniques that
7 would be utilized. Was I correct? Did I -- has a
8 geophysical survey on this 200 mile section been done?

9 A We have not as yet done
10 our geophysical survey. It's in the planning stage,
11 the early planning stage right now.

12 Q Wouldn't you have expected
13 it to be done by this stage?

14 A No.

15 Q Are you behind on that?

16 A Not at all.

17 Q Well, when is it anticipated
18 that that will be completed?

19 A That is part of the study
20 now is to determine the optimum time to do it, relative
21 to --

22 Q To do it.

23 A -- relative to the final
24 design.

25 Q What type of geophysical
26 survey are you presently contemplating?

27 A That will be determined by
28 our geophysicist who is at work now on a report to
29 present our recommendations as to the type.

30 Q But I take it that there

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 is no intention with respect to specific and difficult
2 areas, to do an excavation before final design?

3 A We don't plan to open up
4 any large test pits.

5 Q Do you contemplate the
6 possibility that you may have to, in order to get
7 adequate knowledge?

8 A Well in fact, we have opened
9 up test pits where they have been appropriate. We
10 have opened up test pits very recently to get certain
11 types of samples, but in this particular situation
12 that you have described, we would not be relying upon
13 a test pit in the middle of that speckled bog.

14 Q Well now, let's look at
15 that example just again in terms of how the pipe will
16 work. I take it that you have the pipe, and Dr.
17 Slusarchuk, it's your judgment that the bulb will
18 develop all along the pipe, but at varying degrees,
19 depending upon whether it's in peat or in silt?

20 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

21 A Yes, sir.

22 Q So that the bulb in the
23 silt area will get bigger faster than the bulb in
24 the peat area?

25 A Yes, that would be my
26 estimate, sir.

27 Q So what we have in this
28 bog is not a consistent bulb as you might have in one
29 soil type, but a bulb that shows a configuration?

30 A Yes, sir.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q And isn't it correct to see
2 the pipe when the bulb has formed, as I think some
3 member of the panel referred to it, as a new object,
4 maybe 30 feet in diameter at its maximum growth.
5 Wouldn't that be correct?

6 A Yes, it would be 30 feet
7 in diameter.

8 Q So it's wrong after the
9 frost bulb has been created to think simply of the
10 pipe. We must think of a frozen object, let us say
11 30 feet in diameter, in the middle of unfrozen soils?

12 A Yes, sir.

13 Q And the exterior of the
14 frozen object is earth, and it's not unlike concrete,
15 is it?

16 A No.

17 Q It's not concrete.

18 A It's different that con-
19 crete, sir.

20 Q Yes, but I put it to you
21 that you can visualize this by imagining a 30 foot
22 diameter concrete bulb with a steel liner in the
23 centre of it?

24 A I don't believe that would
25 be a correct analogy.

26 Q Well, how would you
27 analogize it?

28 A I wouldn't try to put an
29 analogy to it, sir. It's just frozen soil around a
30 piece of pipe.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRobert,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q Well let me put a -- my
2 analogies are notorious, so I will withdraw that one,
3 but I take it that when that situation has developed,
4 one cannot think of the movement of the pipe except in
5 terms of the movement of the frozen area around it?

6 A Yes, sir.

7 Q Now that frozen area around
8 the pipe is variable in quality and quantity?

9 A You mean because it's going
10 from the peat to the till, is that what you are
11 referring to, sir?

12 Q Well first of all, in terms
13 of quantity it's variable because you've told us it's
14 bigger in the till area than in the peat area?

15 A Yes.

16 Q And it is -- I take it
17 that it is also variable in terms of quality in the
18 sense that it may be more closely or more densely
19 packed in one section of the till than in the other?
20 As a result of the configuration of the earth?

21 A Well that's possible,
22 certainly.

23 Q Well now, I put it to you
24 that the steel has one strength, which is reasonably
25 consistent, isn't it?

26 A Yes, sir.

27 Q But I put it to you that
28 the so-called concrete around the pipe, because of
29 its variations in quantity and quality, has a variety
30 of different strengths?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 A Within the frozen mass?

2 Q Within the frozen mass?

3 A It could very well have
4 that, sir.

5 Q Yes. The frozen peat will
6 be either stronger or weaker than the frozen silt?

7 A Yes.

8 Q And have you considered
9 how, in terms of differential heave, how these forces
10 in what I call the concrete, are going to work?

11
12 MR. GENEST: Why doesn't my
13 friend call it the frozen ground, because nobody has
14 agreed that it is concrete.

15 MR. SCOTT: All right, very well,
16 Mr. Genest.

17 Q Have you considered how
18 those forces are going to work with the pipe?

19 A We've considered it, yes,
20 sir.

21 Q Well, what is your con-
22 clusion?

23 A By and large, take for
24 example, the centre of the silt till mound there,
25 just where you have got your five foot. You would
26 start to freeze your frost bulb around there, and
27 by and large, sir, my conclusion would be that the
28 frozen soil around the pipe would act more or less
29 like a solid body, a rigid body.
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Isn't it possible that
3 as the pipe is warped under differential, and that
4 will occur, won't it?

5 A Yes.

6 Q But as the pipe is
7 warped under differential heave, the warping or some
8 of it will concentrate on the weaker parts of the
9 soil?

10 A Could you just go over
11 that again, sir?

12 Q Let me
13 put an analogy to you.
14 If I take -- maybe another example, take a pencil and
15 let us assume that the inside lead in the pencil is
16 the pipe, and the outside wood is the frost bulb,
17 a convenient, and in this case and unlike that case,
18 uniform sized bulb. Now the pencil isn't long enough,
19 but I can bend that and it will bend generally
20 evenly along the pencil. You're familiar with that,
21 aren't you?

22 A Yes sir.

23 Q Yes. If there is an
24 imperfection in the wood, the pressures will concen-
25 trate at that imperfection, won't they?

26 A In that case they would,
27 yes.

28 Q If I cut a line in the
29 pencil, the pressures would -- the warping pressures
30 would concentrate at a point where I've cut.

A The pressures would or

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 the bend would? It would certainly bend more there.

3 Q Well, it will bend there
4 to the point of breaking, won't it?

5 A On your pencil it might.

6 Q Well, what I'm suggesting
7 to you is that in a situation like this, where you have
8 different kinds of soil, different dimensions of the
9 bulb, presumably a variety of factors, it is an extreme-
10 ly difficult and complex matter to measure the per-
11 formance of the pipe.

12 A Well, we're talking about
13 the example, at the centre there, and we're considering
14 the frost bulb, now to be a rigid body. I'm not quite
15 sure where the complication arises.

16 Q Well, what I'm really
17 saying by this example is that isn't it possible that
18 as the pipe is warped, as it will be under differential
19 heave, the warp -- not all the warping but much of the
20 warping will concentrate on the weaker parts of the
21 soil jacket.

22 A I don't think that's
23 right, sir.

24 Q You don't think that's
25 so?

26 A If you're telling me that
27 most of the bending -- well --

28 Q Isn't that so?

29 A -- are you saying most
30 of the bending there would then take place in the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 peat and not in the silt?

3 Q No, I don't know enough
4 to make a choice. I'm simply saying that if there are
5 weaknesses in the soil cover, that the pressures of the
6 warping may concentrate at those weaker points.

7 A Yeah, maybe I'd like to
8 retract my answer in not agreeing with you on that.
9 I think that the tendency would be to have some of
10 the bending occurring in the softer material there,
11 at the interface between the softer and the stronger
12 material.

13 THE COMMISSIONER: Which is
14 the softer and which is the stronger?

15 A The peat is the softer,
16 sir.

17 MR. SCOTT: Q Well now, I
18 take it that that kind of phenomena is likely to occur
19 at any location where there is a difference in qualities,
20 the performance qualities of the soil, the frozen
21 soil around the pipe.

22 A It's possible that there
23 are differences going to occur; whether they are
24 going to rupture the pipe or not is another question.

25 Q But if those differences
26 occur, isn't it so that the warping will concentrate
27 at the weaker areas?

28 A Could I have one second,
29 please?

30 Q Yes, by all means.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A Could I pass that question
3 over to Dr. Morgenstern?

4 Q By all means. He's been
5 grabbing for the microphone for about 15 minutes now.

6 WITNESS MORGENSTERN: If I
7 could try and translate the concern. A non-uniform
8 heave of the pipe will generate a non-uniform stress
9 in the frozen soil. Was that the concern?

10 Q I think that's the
11 concern. Thank you. That's all right.

12 A Could you then go on?

13 Q That the warp will con-
14 centrate in the place of weakness.

15 A The frozen soil is
16 significantly stronger than the unfrozen soil below,
17 so that if you're concerned about excessive deforma-
18 tion developing in this frozen encasement around the
19 pipe, it would be limited by the yielding below in the
20 unfrozen soil. If the local stresses become large,
21 they could only be limited by the capacity of the
22 unfrozen soil to transmit them. Therefore this would
23 not contribute to aggravating the bending of the pipe.

24 Q So that the analogy of
25 the pencil that I posed, are you saying that the
26 analogy of the pencil, imperfect as it may be, doesn't
27 apply; the pencil would have to be surrounded with
28 unfrozen soil to make it --

29 A To interact. The total
30 interaction is not simply one of frozen soil and pipe.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 It's unfrozen soil, frozen soil, and pipe.

3 Q Well, I take it first of
4 all that the phenomena that I've attempted to describe
5 is likely to occur, the concentration of the pressures.

6 A Non-uniform distribution
7 of stress leading to intensification locally is cert-
8 ainly a possibility.

9 Q Yes, and do you say that
10 no problem is associated with that because of the
11 presence of surrounding soils?

12 A Yes.

13 Q Well now, Dr. Slusarchuk,
14 did you have any criteria from which you can describe
15 the degree of frost susceptibility of various soils
16 along the route?

17 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: Our
18 interest in frost heaving is to predict the rate of
19 frost heave, and our criteria -- the way we describe
20 frost-susceptibility would be to put our rate of
21 heave on, for example when you're talking about
22 quantifying it, the rate of heave that we would get
23 over some period of time, that is the function of
24 overburden pressure.

25 Q Well, in your volume
26 results from frost effects study, at page 56, para-
27 graph 3.6.6.2, entitled:

28 "Frost susceptibility classification of

29 Calgary silt,"

30 there is implied, at least, as we read it, the existence

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 as we read it, of criteria against which the classifica-
3 tion will be made.

4 MR. GENEST: Would my friend
5 read that portion of the report from which he draws that
6 implication?

7 MR. SCOTT: Yes.

8 "Tests were carried out,"
9 and I'm reading,

10 "Tests were carried out to classify the frost
11 susceptibility of Calgary silt according to
12 the T.R.R.L. frost susceptibility classification.
13 This classification was then compared with the
14 results of the frost effects testing program.
15 Following the procedures set out by Sutherland &
16 Gaskin in 1973, two tests were carried out on
17 Calgary silt samples, one remoulded and one
18 undisturbed."

19 I'm sorry, Dr. Slusarchuk, have you not got the page?

20 A No, I've got it, I'm
21 waiting for the question. I have it sir, yes.

22 Q Well, do you have a
23 criteria from which you can describe the degree of
24 frost susceptibility of soil deposits along the route?

25 A This -- there have been
26 traditional frost susceptibility classifications and
27 we use one and we refer to one there.

28 Q That's the T.R.R. L.?

29 A Yes sir.

30 Q Yes.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A And there's a -- in the
3 next paragraph we also refer to one from the cold
4 regions Research & Engineering Laboratories, the two
5 that are fairly standard use. These have been developed
6 for guidance with regard to developing -- with regard
7 to designing frost heaving for roadways and air strips,
8 in other words a classification -- a frost susceptibility
9 classification developed for low overburden pressures.

10 Q Well I --

11 A Can I finish, please?

12 Q Yes.

13 A We were aware of these
14 tests, of course, and in order to have a tie-in with the
15 body of data of frost susceptibility in the literature
16 we ran two samples of our Calgary silt from our field
17 test facility in order to ensure ourselves and to
18 demonstrate to people with knowledge in these standard
19 frost susceptibility tests that that soil was indeed
20 frost susceptible. We then carried it on farther and
21 used the overburden pressure as another parameter and
22 what we have shown, for example, the standard classifi-
23 cations would say that the Calgary silt soil was highly
24 frost susceptible, we know that if we just put a couple
25 of thousand points per square foot on that same soil
26 we won't get any ice lensing at all, and therefore
27 it has to be classified as non-frost-susceptible. So
28 if you don't bring in the overburden pressure concept
29 into classification, from our point of view it is
30 not applicable. This was simply a tie-in from our

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

work to previous work that was done. Classifications do not apply to our particular conditions.

Q Well, I take it the criteria is in fact the T.R.R.L. frost susceptibility classification. Is that correct?

A That was the one that we referred to here and in the next paragraph we also refer to the C.R.R.E.L. the CRREL the Cold Regions, there are two separate tests.

Q Well, those I understand that both of those are traditional tests.

A Yes sir.

Q And is it correct that both of them -- what is the basis of both of them?

A They freeze a small sample of soil, four inches in diameter, six inches high, and they put a certain temperature at the surface and a certain temperature at the base, and they measure the heave over a period of 250 hours, and the amount of that heave they have a classification, they go over and see if it heaves so many centimeters, it's highly frost-susceptible or non-frost susceptible.

The main point here is that they do it at practically no overburden pressure, where the rates of heave are extremely high.

Q Yes. Well now, within the context of those two criteria established by those classifications, what are traditionally considered to be the frost-susceptible soils?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper.
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A I think most people would
3 consider silty soils in the area highly frost-susceptible.

4 Q Yes. Well, can you give
5 me sort of a ranking of a variety of soil types that
6 are commonly found in the Mackenzie Valley?

7 A In an unfrozen area we
8 have --

9 Q I take it that the most
10 susceptible is silt, is it, generally speaking?

11 A That's according to those
12 traditional ones, yes.

13 Q All right,
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Q Now, where do we go after
2 silt?

3 A Well you can go both ways.
4 You go over to a finer grained soil such as clay, and
5 they're generally rated as not so highly frost
6 susceptible. We could go the other way to the sands,
7 the grain size of the silts being in between the sands
8 and the clay and then on into gravels, that would be
9 not frost susceptible.

10 Q Well for a layman like me,
11 and utilizing the traditional classification technique,
12 --

13 A M'hmm.

14 Q -- I take it that the con-
15 cept at issue here is the spacing between the grains,
16 and the grain size?

17 A Grain size, yes.

18 Q So that you have sand at
19 one end and clay at the other?

20 A Yes.

21 Q Not at the ultimate ends,
22 but --

23 A Right. I understand your
24 analogy, sir.

25 Q Yes, and sand is granular,
26 it has larger grains and more spaces between it, as
27 opposed to clay which has tinier grains and therefore
28 smaller spaces between them, and silt is a nice
29 compromise between the two?

30 A Yes, sir.

1 Q And silt, because of --
2 and in that range, sand, silt and clay, according to
3 the traditional tests, silt is regarded as being the
4 most frost susceptible?

5 A Yes, sir.

6 Q Yes. Well now, is it not
7 possible that other soils like clay at one end, which
8 are normally regarded as less frost susceptible, are
9 in fact frost susceptible over the long term?

10 A Yes, sir.

11 Q Now --

12 A We have said that, sir, in
13 our application.

14 Q I'm not quarrelling with
15 it. I'm just asking if that's your view.

16 a Okay. That's true, yes.

17 Q And I take it it therefore
18 follows that significant heaving over the long term
19 can occur in clay soils?

20 A It's possible.

21 Q Well now, is the rate of
22 freezing of a frost susceptible soil an important con-
23 sideration from the point of view of the formation
24 of ice lenses?

25 A In some instances it is,
26 yes.

27 The rate of freezing around our
28 pipeline is pretty constant, and I presume you are
29 relating your question to our pipeline.

30 Q Well let's take the rate

1 of freezing first and then we will get to your pipe-
2 line.

3 I take it as a general principle,
4 the rate of freezing may have impact on the extent to
5 which ice lenses are formed?

6 A Yes sir.

7 Q Yes. And I -- does it also
8 follow from that, leave aside your particular pipeline
9 for the moment, does it also follow from that that
10 different rates of freezing in somebody else's pipeline,
11 could affect differential heave?

12 A The different rates of
13 freezing can affect differential rates of heave, is
14 that the question?

15 Q Could different rates of
16 freezing enhance differential heave?

17 A In some cases it could
18 possibly enhance it, and in other cases it would pro-
19 bably reduce it.

20 Q But I take it that what it
21 will do is it will affect differential heave one way
22 or the other?

23 A It could, sir, yes.

24 Q Well now, is it possible
25 that varying gas temperatures in the pipeline, assume
26 they vary, that varying gas temperatures could affect
27 the rate of freezing at the bulb?

28 A Are you varying it from at
29 one point in the pipeline from year to year, or are
30 you varying it along the pipeline?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q I'm varying it along the
2 pipeline, for the moment.

3 A And the question again then,
4 was?

5 Q And the question is, could
6 a variety of temperatures within the pipeline affect
7 the rate of freezing?

8 A Yes, sir, that -- the temper-
9 ature of the pipe affects the rate of freezing.

10 Q Yes, and therefore I take
11 it that a variety of temperatures, if such existed,
12 could affect the question of differential heave?

13 A Well, the temperature along
14 the pipeline, this is what you're asking me to con-
15 sider, does not change hardly at all over a short
16 length.

17 Q Well I understand that
18 that is the company's answer to the problem, but I
19 just want to get the problem first, and I take it
20 that if you assume the situation in which the gas
21 temperature varies at various sections of the line,
22 that may affect the rate of freezing?

23 A If the temperature varies,
24 it affects the rate of freezing, yes.

25 Q And the rate of freezing
26 affects, or enhances the differential heave?

27 A It affects -- it can --

28 Q It alters --

29 A Yes.

30 Q -- the rate or the extent

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exm. by Scott

1 of differential heave?

2 A Yes, it can do that.

3 Q Could you provide for us,
4 just as a sample, to be commented on later, a range
5 of typical cut-off pressures, related to the, in terms
6 of the depth of overburden?

7 A I believe --

8 Q Let's take silt of some
9 kind, first.

10 A The silts that we have been
11 measuring, their cut-off pressure has been somewhere
12 in the order of a couple of thousand pounds per square
13 feet.

14 Q Well is that approximately
15 2,000 pounds per square feet? Let's take that. How
16 many feet of overburden is that?

17 A It would depend on where
18 the water table is, sir, but it could vary from say
19 20 feet to 40 feet.

20 Q Well now, what about other
21 typical soils on the route apart from silt?

22 A The sands and finer sands,
23 the silty sands, would have a cut-off pressure, we
24 have measured a couple somewhere in the neighbourhood
25 of about 500 pounds per square foot.

26 Q Equal to how many feet of
27 overburden?

28 A Five to ten feet, sir.

29 Q What about clays?

30 A Clays. We have found that

Clark Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam.by Scott

1 their cut-off pressures are a little bit higher, up
2 around 3,000 pounds per square foot.

3 Q And how many feet of over-
4 burden would that represent, typically?

5 A Thirty to fifty feet, for
6 example.

7 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me.
8 Thirty to fifty feet of overburden?

9 A Yes sir. Yes sir, 3,000
10 pounds per square foot is -- that's the sort of stress
11 level you would find, thirty to fifty feet beneath
12 the ground.

13
14 - MR. GENEST: That is for shut-
15 off pressure?

16 MR. SCOTT: It is an equivalent
17 table, isn't it? You're giving us the pounds per
18 square foot, and then telling us what that equals
19 roughly in terms of overburden?

20 A Yes, sir.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, so I
22 don't lose the thread of this, is there any relation-
23 ship between that figure required and the distance
24 between the top of the pipe and the surface of the
25 earth or the surface of the berm? The upper surface?

26 A You could -- the weight
27 of the pipe is not really contributing very much to
28 the situation, sir. Is that your question? Are you
29 asking if the weight of the pipe --

30 Q No.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRobets,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 A What -- could you give us
2 the question again, sir?

3 Q All right. Thirty to fifty
4 feet of overburden is needed in a particular kind of
5 soil that Mr. Scott described, to put an end to frost
6 heave.

7 A Yes sir. By the overburden,
8 like what he's asked me to translate is what the
9 cut-off pressure was, and I told him what that was,
10 and I have translated that --

11 Q Now cutoff pressure means
12 what is needed to put it into frost heave.

13 A Yes, sir.

14 Q Or to lensing.

15 A To the lensing.

16 Q To the lensing,, all right.

17 A And --

18 Q To put an end to the contin-
19 uing formation of the ice bulb, the frost bulb?

20 A No sir, the frost bulb is
21 still going to keep going, except it's not going to
22 suck in water from the unfrozen ground --

23 Q Yes, all right.

24 A -- and freeze lenses.

25 And if you want the stress level in the soil equivalent
26 to 3,000 pounds per square foot, it would be something
27 similar to what you'd find between 30 and 50 feet
28 beneath the ground surface.

29 Now, we just -- just a hundred
30 pounds per square foot of soil times 30 feet equals

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 3,000 pounds per square foot. That's the only calcul-
2 ation I'm doing here.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: Okay.

4 MR. SCOTT: Can I -- Mr.
5 Commissioner, it might be that if I put the point I
6 was making a little more directly, it would be under-
7 stood.

8 Q I take it, Dr. Slusarchuk,
9 that it's your analysis that the -- that when the
10 cut-off pressure is achieved, lensing under the bulb
11 effectively terminates?

12 A Yes, sir.

13 Q Yes. And therefore, the
14 thing that makes the bulb heave, the presence of the
15 lens , ceases to develop?

16 A Yes, sir.

17 Q Yes. And that the cut-off
18 pressure can be measured in terms of earth above the
19 point?

20 A It can be measured in terms
21 of pounds per square foot, which then can be trans-
22 lated into depths beneath the ground surface, yes.

23 Q And what you are telling
24 me, as I understand it, is that in silt, you've got
25 silt and you want to prevent the lensing, you've got
26 to put, let us say roughly, either 2,000 pounds of
27 pressure on that surface, or you have to have 20 to
28 40 feet of silt on top of the lensing area?

29 A On top of the lensing
30 area, that's correct, yes.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q All right.

2 A That doesn't mean we are
3 building a surcharge of 50 to 100 feet.

4 Q Oh no, no.

5 a Okay.

6 MR.GENEST: Does my -- would my
7 friend object, I just -- I may be getting the wrong
8 impression. Where is it measured from? Is it from
9 the bottom of the ice lens, or from the bottom of the
10 frost bulb?

11 MR. SCOTT: It's measured from
12 the --

13 MR. GENEST: Or the top of the
14 frost bulb, that's where I am confused.

15 MR. SCOTT:

16 Q Isn't the point this, that
17 your studies have shown that frost lensing, in silt
18 for example, will not occur generally speaking,
19 more than 20 to 40 feet down in the silt?

20 A Yes, sir.

21 Q Becase then you have 20
22 to 40 feet of silt and lensing seems to stop?

23 A Yes, sir.

24 Q With that pressure.

25 Now, the top of it, to clear it for Mr. Genest, can
26 be the surface of the ground, or it can be an over-
27 burden?

28 A Yes, sir.

29 Q The --

30 MR. GENEST: I was getting at

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Moggenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 the bottom, Mr. Scott. I just don't want there to be
2 any confusion between the level of the pipe and the
3 lower level of the frost bulb.

4 MR. SCOTT: I'm not talking about
5 the pipe at all now. I'm just talking generally.

6 Q I take it another way of
7 expressing that 20 to 40 feet, is to measure it in
8 terms of weight?

9 A Well, --

10 Q 2,000 pounds.

11 A Weight is, you know,
12 stress sir. Pounds per square foot.

13 Q Yes.

14 A All right.

15 Q All right. Well now, that
16 has led you to conclude that if you can calculate
17 the overburden that you can then apply a pressure or
18 a depth that will terminate lensing?

19 A Yes, sir.

20 Q And that's the whole key
21 to the depth of burial principle, or the berm principle?

22 A It's not the whole key,
23 sir.

24 Q Well a substantial key?

25 A Yes, but it's important
26 how fast, how the overburden reduces the rate of heave
27 while it's getting down to the cut-off pressure.
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Well then, what --

3 A You see what
4 we are worried about, we worried about the amount of
5 heave that's going to happen to the pipe, and it's
6 important to know how the heaving is occurring prior
7 to coming to a stress level of the cut-off pressure.

8 Q But wouldn't you agree
9 with me that that principle that the cut-off pressure
10 can be obtained by weight or depth in any given soil,
11 is one of the central principles upon which your
12 solution to the frost-heaving problem depends?

13 A Yes sir.

14 Q Yes. Well now, I take it
15 that that determination has been made at the Calgary
16 test-site and in your analysis of the problem with the
17 box models that you earlier described.

18 A And mainly from our
19 frost-heave tests on our 4-inch diameter undisturbed
20 samples, sir, that we do in the lab.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, I'm
22 listening, anyway.

23 MR. SCOTT: Q Well, the
24 problem that concerns me is that we heard Dr. McKay
25 in the overview, and he's also written a paper on this
26 subject with which I'm sure you're familiar, in which
27 he described segregated ice -- I think it's at Richards
28 Island or near Tuktoyaktuk or somewhere up there --
29 at a depth of 140 feet. How could that occur if this
30 principle applies?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

A Well, --

Q First of all, could I ask you, are you familiar with his paper?

A No, I'm not with that particular paper, no sir.

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, Dr. McKay was a witness here. There's no argument about his qualifications, I take it. Or is there?

A There's no question about Dr. McKay's qualifications with regard to ground ice; I'm not sure he's a frost heave expert.

MR. SCOTT: I don't put him forward on that basis. I put him forward first of all as an observer, and the reference to which I want to make -- I understand it's not really called a paper, it's called a memorandum of the geological survey of Canada, 71-21. Are you familiar with that?

A Not straight away, sir. I may have read it once, I don't recall it.

Q Well, in that he says -- and my friend will criticize me if I read the abstract, he's talking about observations made in the Tuktoyaktuk Peninsula, and the abstract says -- I should read it because I take it it makes sense:

"Icy sediments ~~were~~ present occur with relatively constant frequency to a depth of at least 140 feet."

A Ice what, sir?

Q

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 "Icy sediments where present occur with
2 relatively constant frequency to a depth
3 of at least 140 feet."
4

5 Now are you familiar with the existence, according to
6 Dr. McKay, of that observable phenomena?

7 A I understand that there
8 is ice to those depths, yes sir.

9 Q Well, how could that
10 phenomena occur and be rationalized with your principle
11 of cut-off pressures?

12 A I'm not --

13 WITNESS MORGENSTERN: Could I
14 add a comment here? There are several processes
15 that could account for it. One, of course it could be
16 part of the depositional history of the area that
17 wasn't at that depth when the ground ice was formed.
18 But many of us feel, and I think, in fact I can cite
19 Dr. McKay here, as a person who has produced field
20 data in support of the origin of massive ground ice
21 beds at substantial depths that are the result of
22 expulsion processes during freezing. When the pressure
23 on the freezing ground exceeds the cut-off pressure,
24 the water instead of being sucked towards the freezing
25 front is in fact expelled away from it, and it will
26 then find a location in which to form certain sill
27 like or tabular forms of ground ice. So that the
28 further range of increasing overburden pressure also
29 gives us mechanisms to provide segregated ground ice.
30 I suggest that's one of the processes that we think

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 accounts for segregated ice at depth.

3 Q I take it, Dr. Morgenstern,
4 that without explanation the observations of Dr. McKay
5 require rationalization with the cut-off pressure
6 principle.

7 A Yes.

8 Q Without explanation the
9 two can't stand together in any rational system, with-
10 out an explanation such as you've given.

11 A Yes.

12 Q Now, are there any other
13 possible explanations, apart from the one you've given?

14 A My observation of the
15 geological history, of course, accounts for or at least
16 embraces a complexity of geological environments,
17 erosion and depositional features leading to a
18 complex stratigraphy. It really in itself takes into
19 account a lot of conditions.

20 Q Well, what I'm concerned
21 about is apart from a hypothesis, of what assurance
22 is there that Dr. McKay's observations do not reveal
23 an inconsistency in the cut-off pressure theory?

24 A The cut-off pressure
25 theory has been explored over the range of heat fluxes,
26 sil conditions, that we're concerned with in the
27 pipeline. The observations of Dr. McKay lend themselves
28 to several interpretations. I don't see an inconsis-
29 tency, we've obviously addressed this point, and while
30 we may not -- there isn't a general agreement today on

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 the origin of these massive ground ice beds which
3 we find around Tuktoyaktuk. There is some fascination
4 but I think it's explained in terms of expulsion process,
5 that's my view. Others may hold a different view.

6 Q But there are other
7 theories for their existence.

8 A there are many, and
9 it takes a great deal of local geological data to begin
10 to decipher them

11 Q What I'm concerned about
12 is what assurance can we have that they are not a
13 phenomena that is inconsistent with the cut-off pressure
14 theory over let us say, a 150-year winter?

15 A Our assurance.

16 Q Well, on such matters,
17 great communications industries have been built; but
18 I --

19 A I think to pursue it
20 further. One would have to become more site-specific
21 and discuss stratigraphy and look at the peculiarities
22 of the ice features. We certainly addressed the ques-
23 tion that segregated ice is found at greater depths
24 than one would infer from just putting a shut-off
25 pressure on at the outset of a geological process,
26 in all of the cases we've looked at we think can be
27 accounted for by expulsion process, we think it's a
28 very important feature in the development of segregated
29 ground ice and by complexities of ground surfaces and
30 freezing programs.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2
3 Q So according to that,
4 is it so that if the bulb were 100 feet over many
5 years, no doubt, that ice lensing would occur at the
6 bottom of the bulb?

7 A If the bulb were 100
8 feet deep in the sense of the pressure exceeds the
9 cut-off pressure?

10 Q Yes.

11 A Then it would begin
12 to push water away from it, and there wouldn't be
13 lensing beside the bulb but you'd be getting some
14 accumulation -- well, the snow, of course, elsewhere.

15 Q there would be no lensing,
16 you say --

17 A Beneath the bulb.

18 Q Yes.

19 A It would be expelling
20 water from it.

21 Q Isn't it true that with
22 respect to this theory and this pipeline, the analysis
23 has all been done with -- by tests at the test-sites
24 and in the laboratories?

25 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: This is
26 not to just the overall cut-off pressure concept and
27 the effect of overburden on the rate of heave. The
28 Polar Region Research Engineering Laboratories, they
29 carried out pretty extensive studies on that in
30 Alaska several years ago where they actually surcharged
the ground surface at different overburden pressures

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 and measured the rates of heave there, and this is, I
3 think, back in 1964.

4 Q Yes, but isn't it so
5 that all the testing that has been done has been done
6 over a 1, or 2, or 3-year period?

7 A Our testing has been, but
8 there are other people's data available like Aikin,
9 the fellow that wrote that up, I think that was in '66,
10 Bennel & Capler did a similar thing previous to that,
11 and the phenomenon of overburden pressure reducing
12 the rate of heave has been known since as far back as
13 about 1930.

14 Q What was the period of
15 their tests?

16 A How do you mean "the
17 period"?

18 Q The period of time over
19 which they made observations?

20 A I can't give that to you
21 right now, sir.

22 Q I put it to you that the
23 thing about what's been observed at Tuktoyaktuk is that
24 it's had many, many years potentially, it's had many,
25 many years to develop.

26 A Hundreds of years.

27 Q Yes, and what is being
28 described for us here is what will occur in a relative-
29 ly short span, four to six years, or ten years. What
30 assurance have we that -- apart from what Dr.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Morgenstern has said about other explanations, what
3 assurance have we that over a long period of time
4 it may not be shown that the cut-off pressure over a
5 constant winter doesn't act the way you think it will?

6 A Well, we've done numerous
7 tests on different types of soils in the field, and
8 from the Calgary test-site in our 4-inch undisturbed
9 samples to get their frost-heaving characteristics.
10 We have done a number of tests on our model box with
11 regard to overburden pressure, and with no overburden
12 pressure. We have had four different test-sites,
13 test sections out at our test-site and we have not
14 noticed any inconsistency in any of the work that
15 we've done there that can't be explained by our
16 basic philosophies or our design concepts.' We think
17 that our concepts are rational, and that we have shown
18 them to in fact be applicable, and other than running
19 something for six years, I'm not sure how you can
20 answer your question.
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Q Well now earlier when you
2 were at the chart, you were referring to monitoring
3 procedures that would be carried out following the
4 construction. Could you outline for us, the monitoring
5 procedures or the control procedures that in your
6 judgment are necessary? To deal with potential
7 heaving?

8 A We haven't decided on a
9 final method at the moment, but there are several
10 methods available to us. One method would be a method
11 similar to what we are using at the field test site.
12 Have riser rods come from the pipe up above the ground
13 surface, and we would simply take elevations
14 on those riser rods, and it would give us an indication
15 of what the pipe is doing.

16 Q Yes. That's sort of a sur-
17 veying technique, is it?

18 A Yes, sir.

19 Q And what intervals would
20 you anticipate it might be wise to go into the pipe
21 and do this?

22 A Well to start, you would
23 want to do it every, I know, every two or three months,
24 something like that, but all your action or most of
25 your action is taking place in the first few years, so
26 after three or four years, you would be pretty sure
27 of what was happening, and as time went along, you
28 wouldn't do it as often, quite clearly.

29 Q Have you given any consider-
30 ation to using a pig that goes down the pipe?

1 A Yes sir.

2 Q Are you going to do that,
3 or do you know?

4 A We haven't made a final
5 decision on that, sir, but it is one of the things
6 that we are considering.

7 Q Are there other techniques
8 of monitoring that are underconsideration?

9 A We are tentatively looking
10 at some geophysical methods.

11 Q What do you mean by geo-
12 physical methods? I'm not clear what that means.

13 A Similar to what Dr. Morgen-
14 stern described previously, with running a piece of
15 equipment along the line and perhaps --

16 Q Is this on top of the line?

17 A On top of the ground, sir.

18 Q On top of the ground, or

19 --

20 A You would send out signals
21 of one sort or another that would be perhaps based on,
22 like for an example, based on the difference in magnet-
23 ism or the properties of the steel versus the proper-
24 ties of the soil.

25 Q Is there any time table
26 during which we may expect to know how the monitoring
27 is going to take place? Perhaps that is for Dr.
28 Clark, I don't know.

29 WITNESS CLARK:

30 A I would suggest that that

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 decision would be made about the time that we would
2 produce our design manual. The geophysical application
3 is being explored now, but I'm sure that some of your
4 advisors could tell you how rapidly the technology is
5 developing in that area.

6 It is under consideration now as
7 a technique along with the others that Dr. Slusarchuk
8 has mentioned.

9 Q The point that I'm concerned
10 about is that obviously some of the observational
11 techniques require travel at regular intervals, of
12 persons along the line and others don't. I wonder when
13 we may expect to have some assurance whether the first
14 alternative is a possibility or whether it's not?

15 A That's about the time that
16 we would have our design manuals, part of .final
17 design --

18 Q I see.

19 A -- that we would make that/ decision

20 Q And I take it, Dr. Slusar-
21 chuk, when in this monitoring process you find/what I
22 will call unanticipated heave , the remedy is going
23 to be overburden, is it?

24 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

25 A That's one of our remedies,
26 yes.

27 Q Are you at that stage
28 going to regard the other three potential remedies,
29 that is a deeper cut, changing the soil or twinning,
30 as possible remedies?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 A We wouldn't go in and bury
2 the pipe deeper, and what was your other --

3 Q Well, they're your remedies,
4 not mine. The other is twinning, and alternating the
5 gas. You're obviously not going to do that, I take it,
6 as part of the monitoring process?

7 A Not as part of the monitor-
8 ing process --

9 Q Well as part of the repair
10 process?

11 A If, for example, we were
12 monitoring the frost heave at a river crossing, and
13 we saw that the heave was such that it was starting to
14 become unacceptable, then you can't surcharge quite
15 clearly. The -- you could think about putting down
16 steam points, for example. We are just talking about
17 places where there are no twins, now.

18 Q Yes.

19 A No twin lines.
20 You could thaw out some of the soil underneath it,
21 or you might be forced to build another line.

22 Q So, would it be correct to
23 say that when the monitoring process is underway, the
24 remedies that in practical terms are going to be
25 available to you at that stage, are perhaps at water
26 crossings, twinning if necessary in the first place,
27 in the second place increas~~ing~~ing the overburden -- are
28 you going to consider utilizing changing the --
29 removing the frost susceptible soil?

30 A No, sir, I don't believe we

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 would.

2 Q So would it be correct to
3 say that when you come to monitoring and repair,
4 it's then going to be too late to bury deeper as a
5 remedy or to change the soil as a remedy?

6 WITNESS CLARK:

7 A No, the soil could be
8 changed by rapidly freezing. You could go in and
9 artificially freeze the soil to increase the effective
10 overburden pressure at the frost bulb. In other
11 words, instead of three years or five years, the
12 freezing could take place over a matter of days.

13 Q In that monitoring process,
14 is it conceivable that the pipe could ever get out of
15 the ground?

16 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: .

17 A No, that is our second
18 guideline, sir, that the total heave of the pipe is
19 limited to movement equivalent to coming up to about
20 one foot beneath the ground surface.

21 Q Well what I'm getting at
22 is that 10 or 5 years from now, am I going to read
23 somewhere in the paper that a plane has gone in
24 because a hunk of the pipe appeared above the
25 ground?

26 MR. GENEST: You'll hear about
27 it at this hearing.

28 MR. SCOTT:

29 Q Is that a risk?
30

1 WITNESS CLARK:

2 A We don't see that that is
3 a risk, no.

4 Q Well now, one other sub-
5 stantial subject, you presently propose to refrigerate
6 the pipe right down to the Alberta border. First of
7 all, how did you decide on that limit? In terms of
8 map making it's convenient, but how did you decide to
9 stop there, rather than further north?

10 A I think that earlier on in
11 the cross-examination by Mr. Templeton, we rationalized
12 that it was very clear that we carry it down to the
13 discontinuous zone frozen.

14 Q So there's no doubt about
15 that, and that would end at about Willowlake, would
16 it?

17 A About the Willowlake River,
18 where we get into the discontinuous, the frozen part,
19 the part that is mostly frozen, beyond there there is
20 an area where it is not entirely critical as to where
21 you stop it. We figure we have picked the optimum
22 point to stop it, where the frost heave that would
23 occur within that area could be tolerated, and beyond
24 that area, the settlement that would accompany the
25 degradation of the permafrost could be tolerated.

26 Q It's obvious, is it not,
27 Dr. Clark, that the further south you get from Willow-
28 lake, the greater the proportion of unfrozen soil?

29 A That's right.

30 Q Yes, and I take it that

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 the proportion of ice rich soil in those frozen areas,
2 also lessens markedly?

3 A It lessens, yes.

4 Q What I am concerned about
5 is that it seems to me that when you are south of
6 Willowlake, you are confronted with a relatively modest
7 proportion of frozen soils, and a relatively modest
8 proportion within that, of ice rich soils?

9 A Yes, there's some ice rich
10 soils there, yes.

11 Q And that what you are
12 doing, therefore, is you are running the risks of
13 frost heave to protect a relatively modest proportion
14 of permafrost?

15 A No, we don't see the frost
16 heave as a risk. We see it as a controllable phenomena
17 that would be to our advantage to deal with frost heave,
18 as opposed to thaw settlement in that case.

19 Q Well let me put this
20 situation to you, that when you get south of
21 Willowlake, there are areas of permafrost.

22 A Yes.

23 Q They decrease in volume as
24 you get down to the border? In proportion to unfrozen
25 soil?

26 A Yes.

27 Q And where they exist, I
28 suggest to you that the temperatures of the permafrost
29 are very close to 32 degrees as we used to call it?

30 A Yes.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Mogenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam.by Scott

1 Q You might have 31.8, 31.9,
2 marginally at the freezing point?

3 A Yes.

4 Q Yes. Well now, the first
5 thing you are going to do when you build this pipeline,
6 is you are going to cut down all the trees and take up
7 most of the vegetation?

8 A We wouldn't be taking up
9 the vegetation.

10 Q Well, you will be cutting
11 down the trees along the route?

12 A The trees will be cleared.

13 Q And then you're going to
14 dig the trench and put in the pipeline and bury it?

15 A That's correct.

16 Q Yes. And you're not going
17 to begin to chill it until two and a half or three
18 years from the commencement of the operation has passed?

19 A That varies with the
20 construction.

21 Q Well, you're not going to
22 -- it's going to be at least two years, isn't it?

23 A Yes, that's correct.

24 Q All right. Well now, I
25 put it to you, if the temperature is so marginally
26 close to the freezing line, that before you begin to
27 chill, that permafrost is going to move from 31.8 to
28 32.5.

29 A Some of it will, yes.

30 Q And that in the very

1 process of building your line, you will be forced to
2 -- at least on the route, to destroy the frozen soil?

3 A It wouldn't be destroyed,
4 it would be thawed.

5 Q It will be thawed, so that
6 the proportion of permafrost that exists there now,
7 will be substantially reduced after construction, but
8 before freezing?

9 A I don't think it would be
10 substantially. Our thermal analysis that we have
11 done doesn't support that conclusion.

12 Q Well let me put this
13 proposition to you. I take it that your only interest
14 in freezing the pipe is because of the environmental
15 concern?

16 A That's predominantly the
17 interest, yes.

18 Q Is there any other interest?

19 A We feel that it's a more
20 secure pipeline.

21 Q Cold than hot?

22 A In permafrost.

23 Q Oh, in terms of integrity?

24 A Yes.

25 Q Yes. If it could be
26 demonstrated to you that the construction procedures
27 would markedly reduce on the right-of-way the amount
28 of permafrost, would you be prepared to recommend to
29 your client that the chilling point should be moved
30 further north?

1 A I would see as our responsi-
2 bility to, in final design, to optimize this pipeline,
3 and if there was a distinct advantage to moving the
4 chilling point farther north, we would not be fulfill-
5 ing our professional responsibilities if we didn't
6 recommend that.

7 However, our assessment is at
8 this time, is that there is no distinct advantage.

9 Q Has your assessment, your
10 geothermal analysis taken account of the effect of
11 cutting trees on the line?

12 A It is certainly my under-
13 standing that it has.

14 Q Has it taken account of
15 ditching and the year and a half of construction?

16 A Yes.
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Is the geothermal analysis
3 and the prediction of temperatures a prediction after
4 two years of cutting trees and digging soil?

5 A Yes.

6 Q Just so I'll be perfectly
7 clear, do I understand that the only issue in chilling
8 as far as you are concerned is - - has to do with the
9 integrity of the pipe and the environmental impact.

10 A That's correct.

11 Q And I take it that you
12 have made a recommendation to your client on the basis
13 of the material that you've shown us, as to where the
14 chilling should stop.

15 A Yes, that's correct.

16 Q And are you aware that
17 your client has had any reservations about acting on
18 your recommendation?

19 A I'm not aware of any.
20 I think I mentioned when talking with Mr. Templeton
21 that there is this grey area, it could be one way or
22 the other. It's hard to be precise to a point, and
23 we did want to keep some options open in fixing that
24 last point of chilling.

25 Q I take it that's particularly
26 true, isn't it, because of the Fort Simpson route
27 change where there are a limited number of bore holes,
28 and your knowledge of the temperatures in the routes
29 is much less.

30 A We have less knowledge of

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
CrossExam by Scott

1
2 the actual temperature from measurements which we have
3 made, however we have made an assessment of the quanti-
4 ties of frozen soil in that route.

5 Q But just so we'll put
6 this issue aside, do I understand you to say that there
7 is no economic consideration whatever in chilling or
8 non-chilling?

9 A Oh, I think there have
10 been substantial economic considerations on chilling.

11 Q Acting on your recommen-
12 dation ?

13 A The economic analysis
14 would be made by the people who are doing the flow
15 studies.

16 Q But that's not Northern
17 Engineering.

18 A No.

19 Q Well then, what I'm gett-
20 ing at is there another factor here which has played
21 in your recommendation as to the chilling cut-off
22 point, namely an economic factor?

23 A The economic factor would
24 relate to the protection of the environment and the
25 ensuring the security of the line. In other words,
26 we feel that the costs associated with inhibiting
27 frost heave burying deeper are not very great in
28 proportion to the line when it's put in the perspective
29 of how much frost heaving soil we have. It may be
30 an economic --

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q What are the costs that
3 play against that, if you decided for example north
4 of Fort Simpson to stop chilling, what would be the
5 costs that --

6 A Well, the costs that
7 I would consider would be those associated with the
8 security of the line, the integrity of the line, and
9 the environment, the physical environment, if we
10 were thawing it, thawing the frozen portions.

11 Q Well, what sort of
12 costs would be involved to the company in that
13 circumstance?

14 A Oh, the costs associated
15 with maintaining drainage and erosion control,
16 controlling settlement of the line in certain instances.

17 Q Well, I take it, however,
18 there has never been any suggestion on which you've
19 acted that there is an economic factor in chilling
20 apart from the maintenance of the line.

21 A I understand that the
22 economic factor associated with chilling is related
23 to the type of chilling, but my understanding is that
24 there is no economic -- no major economic advantage
25 in throughput, for instance.

26 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,
27 we have a long way to go. I'd be prepared to go an
28 hour or two this afternoon, if -- in order to deal
29 with these matters.

30 THE COMMISSIONER: I think

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

that would be a good idea. Any objection, Mr.

Genest?

MR. GENEST: None at all, sir.

THE COMMISSIONER: And I think
your panel would prefer to continue.

MR. GENEST: I think they
would.

THE COMMISSIONER: Well,
let's adjourn until 2:30.

(PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED TO 2:30 P.M.)

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. SCOTT:

Q Dr. Clark, can you tell me
when the decision was made to chill the gas to the
Alberta border?

WITNESS CLARK:

A I can't recall that from
memory. I believe the next panel could give you more
precise information on that than I could.

Q Can you tell me generally?

A No, I would have to check
that.

MR. GENEST: I will see if I
can find that out right now.

Late '72, I am informed, Mr.
Scott.

MR. SCOTT: Thank you very
much.

Q Dr. Slusarchuk, in addition
to the berm of overburden, you have listed three other
methods of keeping the pipe down. You have told me
that two of them only will be utilized in remedial
work. Is Northern Engineering in any position to say
whether in fact they are going to utilize the techniques,
removal of frost susceptible soil or insulation of
pipe? Are these presented as possibilities, or are
they going to in fact be used from place to place?

WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

A They can be used, sir.

Q Well I know they can be

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 used, but are they going to be used?

2 A We plan to use them, yes.

3 Q You plan to use them. Are
4 you in a position to estimate for us over what proport-
5 ion of the pipe they may be used, or how extensively?

6 A A very small proportion, sir.

7 Q I take it that the berm
8 is going to be the substantial remedy, is that
9 correct?

10 A That and the deep burial.

11 Q And deep burial.

12 A Yes, sir.

13 Q Yes. And can you tell us
14 in what category of situation removal of frost suscept-
15 ible soil is going to be the remedy of choice?

16 A When we bring the pipe out
17 of the ground, for example, around compressor
18 stations, we probably -- we plan to use gravel in
19 those areas.

20 Q Yes. Any others?

21 A We don't have any others
22 in mind, sir, that I'm aware of at the moment.

23 Q All right. In what circum-
24 stances are you going to use the insulation of pipe?

25 A At river crossings, basic-
26 ally.

27 Q Are you going to use --

28 A At small river ones, small
29 river crossings.

30 Q Is that only under the river?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Or are you going to use it on ground aswell?

2 A Basically under the river,
3 sir.

4 Q I take it it will be used
5 under small rivers where there is a permafrost base?

6 A Generally -- yes, sir.

7 Q Yes. Now dealing with the
8 insulation of the pipe, is it the intention or the
9 is it possible to utilize -- and it's a depth of
10 insulation that will totally prevent any freezing out-
11 side.

12 A We haven't investigated
13 thickness or anything like that. I'm not sure whether
14 theoretically there could be, but we're not proposing
15 anything like that, sir.

16 Q I take it then.that you're
17 proposing a kind of insulation in which freezing will
18 be transmitted from the pipe beyond the insulation?

19 A Yes, sir.

20 Q And I take it that it
21 therefore follows that over a period of time a frost
22 bulb will develop, even around insulated pipes?

23 A Yes, sir.

24 Q But it will be a smaller
25 frost bulb?

26 A It will be a smaller frost
27 bulb, and the idea would be to use it where
28 convection, or where you have your stream running in
29 the gravel and the heat that would be brought to the
30 frost bulb with the moving water would in fact

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 counteract the tendency for the bulb to move. That's
2 the reason why we try to use it in those cases.

3 Q Well now I take it a smaller
4 of
5 frost bulb, as a result/insulation, will mean the
6 lenses are formed closer to the surface?

7 A Yes, sir.

8 Q And that therefore because
9 of the smaller frost bulb, there will be a smaller
10 overburden?

11 A Yes, sir.

12 Q Well doesn't that lead one
13 to the conclusion that the capacity for lensing will
14 not be cancelled out by an overburden?

15 A I was thinking, sir, of
16 small streams where there was gravel to several feet
17 underneath the river bed and you didn't want to freeze
18 that off, or another -- or alternatively you didn't
19 want to allow the frost bulb to get into the frost
20 susceptible soil that might be at depths of 20 to 25
21 feet beneath the gravel. The first 10 to 20 or 25
22 feet would not be frost susceptible.

23 Q Do I understand then that
24 the insulation will be used only in non-frost
25 susceptible soils?

26 A The frost susceptible soil
27 would be underneath the gravel. I don't -- we are
28 not contemplating to insulate in soil that is actually
29 frost susceptible itself.

30 Q So that remedy will not
be used in cases where the pipe passes through frost

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 susceptible soils?

2 A But the frost bulb with
3 time, sir, may advance into frost susceptible soil
4 underneath the gravel.

5 Q Yes.

6 A Okay, and the reason you
7 put the insulation on there is to reduce the heat flux
8 of the pipe, have the frost bulb tend to be smaller,
9 the effect of the convection would tend to keep the
10 frost bulb even smaller, and the frost bulb would then
11 not reach the frost susceptible soil underneath the
12 gravel.

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Thank you. Well now
3 let's deal with the dual pipeline river crossings and
4 I take it that the scheme here is that you're going to
5 pipe the gas through one river crossing, chill, and
6 then after an interval you're going to cut off that
7 pipe and ship it through the other pipe.

8 A Yes sir.

9 Q Have you given any
10 thought to the intervals that are going to be utilized?
11 First of all, is this a serious remedy, a remedy
12 seriously proposed?

13 A It's a real possibility,
14 certainly.

15 Q But is there anything that
16 suggests to you that it's going to work?

17 A Yes.

18 Q I take it that that's
19 advanced as a serious solution for this problem.

20 A It's advanced, sir, as
21 a method^{by} which we can take advantage of the dual cross-
22 ings with regard to frost heave at river crossings.

23 Q Yes, well have you any
24 studies that indicate, for example, over what period
25 of time after the gas is cut off in one pipe, warming
26 is going to occur and the development of lensing term-
27 inate?

28 A We have done a couple of
29 geothermal studies on that, sir.

30 Q Well, have you got them?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Or can you give us a reference to your studies with
3 respect to this remedy?

4 A We do not have that in
5 a report, no sir.

6 Q Isn't this entirely a
7 theoretical proposition?

8 A It's not -- I wouldn't
9 consider it theoretical. We've analyzed it from a
10 geothermal point of view, and we know that because of
11 the warm nature of the soil underneath the pipe that
12 the frost bulb would tend to stop growing at an earlier
13 stage because of the warmth underneath the river, and
14 therefore in our opinion would reduce the total frost
15 heave.

16 Q Well again, isn't the
17 risk here that you will produce a smaller frost bulb?

18 A Yes, you produce a
19 smaller frost bulb but I think we probably run the one
20 for a few years, say for two or three years, and drive
21 the frost bulb down quickly.

22 Q Well, how many years?
23 What's the data on this remedy? Are you going to
24 alternate it every two years, or five years, or three
25 months?

26 A We haven't established
27 that, sir, but we have established that conceptually
28 it seems to be quite a reasonable thing to think about.

29 Q I don't want to be dis-
30 respectful of any of the very significant work that

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 you' ve done, but I sense that with respect to this
3 remedy, that it seems to be something drawn on the
4 back of a cigarette box as a concept. Has it been
5 analyzed and proved out as a remedy?

6 A It's been analyzed to
7 the extent that I've analyzed it, sir. We haven't
8 carried out any field tests or anything like that on it.

9 Q Well, isn't there a
10 risk that the smaller frost bulb is going to again
11 mean a lower overburden and more lensing?

12 A There is a possibility
13 but on the same token, while there was a shutdown you
14 would have some thaw back and you'd have to re-freeze
15 that to come back to where you were.

16 Q Are you going to use
17 this remedy in frost-susceptible soils?

18 A No sir, we're only going
19 to use it where dual crossings are already there and
20 there's a potential use of a dual crossing.

21 Q So that when we come
22 back to frost susceptible soils, we really have three
23 remedies. Well, we have deep burial. I take it that's
24 not a remedy, is it? You're either going to do it
25 at the beginning or not at all.

26 A That's a design measure,
27 sir.

28 Q Yes, so that with respect
29 to frost-susceptible soils, the remedies are removal
30 of that soil and adding to the berm.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A Those are also design
3 measures.

4 Q We'll be coming to it
5 later but I take it the cross-delta is in frost-suscep-
6 tible soils.

7 A It is in soil that is
8 classified as silty and some silty clay, which then
9 makes it a potential for frost heaving.

10 Q There is no doubt, is
11 there, about the fact that those soils are classified
12 as frost-susceptible?

13 A Well, sir --

14 Q According to the
15 traditional classification.

16 A -- according to them, they
17 certainly would be.

18 Q All right. Was one of
19 the purposes of the Calgary test-site to deal with
20 the -- on a test basis -- with the differential heave
21 problem?

22 A No sir, not directly
23 to check out differential heave, and how it reacts with
24 the -- inter-reacts with the pipe.

25 Q I take it that the answer
26 to my question is "No, it isn't for that purpose," is
27 illustrated by the fact that the lengths of pipe are
28 only 40 feet long.

29 A Yes sir.

30 Q And I take it that at the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Calgary test-site, whatever else may be said about
3 it, you basically are using soil of one classification
4 type.

5 A There are different layers
6 there down to about the 11-foot level you have a
7 more silty soil, and as you go down beneath that a little
8 bit deeper you start to become more fines in it, but
9 generally you'd classify it as a silty soil.

10 Q And as a result, at
11 Calgary, you don't have at the Calgary test-site the
12 wide variety of soils adjacent one to the other as
13 they will be found in the line itself.

14 A No sir.
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q And additionally, I take
2 it that you're experience at the Calgary test site,
3 has been limited basically to one year?

4 A Yes, sir.

5 Q And that what you've had
6 to do at Calgary is take your findings with your 40
7 foot pipe in that kind of soil over one year, and
8 extrapolate them, which I understand is the expression,
9 to the life of the 25 year pipeline?

10 A We try to do more than
11 that. We've tried to establish that we had a rational
12 design methodology and to prove that out, and at the
13 same time to use that hard data of one year's operation,
14 and then of course we had to extrapolate beyond that.

15 Q Yes. Does a rational design
16 methodology mean a concept?

17 A No sir, it could mean that,
18 or it means that in part, but to me it means something
19 that you've proposed and you've checked out, and
20 you've noticed no inconsistencies in the various
21 tests you've been running, and you're reasonably satisfied
22 with the predictions that you can make.

23 Q Yes. Well, isn't it fair
24 to say, that in order to move from your theory and
25 the tests on the ground at Calgary, you have to over
26 one year, you have to extrapolate a very substantial
27 amount to get the conditions that are going to con-
28 front this pipeline in the field?

29 A We plan to operate the pipe
30 in the field for 25 years or so --

1 Q We don't want you to do
2 any experimenting there.

3 A -- we have only run the
4 test sites for one year, so it's quite clear that we
5 have to extrapolate that extra --

6 Q And that's a substantial
7 extrapolation, isn't it?

8 A It's substantial in time or
9 in percentage of years, say one over 25 or something
10 like that, but --

11 Q And it's substantial in
12 terms --

13 MR. GENEST: Let him finish his
14 answer.

15 MR. SCOTT: I'm sorry.
16 Is there anything else?

17 A It doesn't necessarily
18 mean it's substantial with regard to the appropriate-
19 ness of our design methodology.

20 Q Well, don't you think you
21 are taking a fair calculated risk that the experiences
22 of your laboratory will be borne out in the field over
23 25 or 30 years?

24 A There is a judgment that
25 we have to apply to the numbers that we are getting
26 and to the predictions. The -- we have used our
27 controls -- our restrain section, for example, to
28 simulate what was going to happen at -- as the frost
29 bulb would penetrate deeper, which would be 5, 10,
30 15 or 20 years down the road, so even though there is

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 only a one year period there, of test results, there
2 is tie-ins between what we are getting and what we
3 foresee to happen in the future.

4 Q Well now, did I understand
5 you to say in your evidence in chief, that the situation
6 at the test site at Calgary represented in terms of
7 sub-soil and ground water conditions, the worst
8 possible situations that could be found in this route?

9 A Not on the route. I think
10 we -- I'm not -- maybe we should have a look at exactly
11 what you are referring to there.

12 Q But what do you say about
13 the soil and water conditions that are found at the
14 Calgary test site?

15 A We've said that
16 they are traditionally recognized as frost susceptible
17 soils and we have a water table that can produce
18 -- supply the water that is required for frost heaving
19 all at once, and in our view it represents a frost
20 heaving condition that is representative of a worst
21 case condition .

22 Q Yes. Well now, what about
23 clay soils over long periods of time? That hasn't
24 been tested at Calgary?

25 A No sir.

26 Q No. Well, is that not
27 possibly a worst condition?

28 A It's possible that it
29 could be similar to a worst condition or that over
30 the lifetime of the pipe it could heave similar to

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam by Scott

1 what this kind of soil could heave to.

2 Q What's the water table at
3 Calgary?

4 A It's about six feet, sir.
5 Six feet beneath the ground surface.

6 Q So that example I gave you
7 on the diagram is much worse than anything you have at
8 Calgary?

9 A It's not worse from the
10 point of view of supplying water to the frost front
11 beneath the bulb, sir.

12 Q It's worse in terms of
13 water table, isn't it?

14 A But that's not the point,
15 sir. The point is, is where the water is coming from
16 that is going to grow the ice lenses to cause the
17 heave of the frost bulb in the pipe, and as long as
18 the water table is approximately equal to the base of
19 the pipe, we are not restricting the availability of
20 water for that soil to suck in all the water it wants.

21 The situation that makes it
22 worse in your particular diagram, wherever it's gone
23 to, is the fact that the water table is higher and
24 it reduces the effective stress of the soil, and it
25 has a tendency to reduce the overburden pressure and
26 the stress on the frost front. That's the effect of
27 the ground water table there being a worse case --

28 Q Yes.

29 A -- not of restricting the
30 supply of water.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q Yes. But I take it that
2 with a water table at surface, you create a situation
3 worse than existed at Calgary?

4 A We'd create a condition
5 that frost heave would heave faster, yes.

6 Q Yes. And that's worse?

7 A Well, it could be worse.
8 We were trying to determine, we were trying to examine
9 our design methodology, or develop our design method-
10 ology to formulate our predictions and our procedures
11 for that, and we could have made a situation worse
12 by putting the pipe right at the ground surface, for
13 example.

14 Q Dr. Slusarchuk, looking at
15 the last diagram in your book, "Results from Frost
16 Effect Study," the last page, --

17 A Yes, sir.

18 Q -- it's perfectly clear,
19 isn't it, and perhaps you've said this, but the
20 development of heave is much greater where the water
21 table is at the surface than when the water table,
22 for example in your diagram in one of the lines, is
23 five feet down?

24 A It's worse because it
25 reduces the effective stress. It's not worse from
26 the fact that more water is available, that's the
27 distinction I'm trying to make, sir.

28 Q All right. I understand
29 why it's worse, I simply put it to you that that
30 factor creates a situation that is worse than any at

Clar, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 the Calgary test site?

2 A It would create -- the
3 pipe would heave faster under those conditions, yes
4 sir.

5 Q And I take/a situation in
6 which there is artesian water is worse than any that
7 exists at the Calgary test site?

8 A Yes, if the flow was sub-
9 stantial, or in other words, that the excess pore
10 pressure at the depths that we are talking about, due
11 to the artesian pressures, would in fact reduce the
12 effective stress of the frost front.

13 Q And artesian water in this
14 context, as I understand it, means not water from a
15 well, which is what I thought until a week ago, but
16 rather water that is under some kind of pressure
17 that will bring it above the surface of the ground?

18 A Yes, sir.

19 Q Yes, and that pressure can
20 exist because it is collected and there is nowhere
21 for it to go?

22 A Yes, something like that
23 sir, yes.

24 Q And that would be a worse
25 situation than existed at Calgary?

26 A Marginally.

27 Q Yes. Have you any idea
28 how frequently artesian pressures -- artesian waters
29 exist along this route?

30 A I understand that along

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 the portions of the east side of the Mackenzie River
2 is a discharge area, and where water is coming up
3 from below, up towards the surface, and that would
4 be quite a number of miles. I'm not exactly sure
5 what it would be.
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

Q Well, I take it what you're saying -- I'm sorry -- do you know anything else about artesian water anywhere else on the line, its location, the extent to which it may be present in the soils?

A Not myself, sir.

WITNESS CLARK: One of our colleagues is expert in this area that we have chosen by reason of phasing to bring him on in Phase 2. He works very closely with us in the frost heave program, so --

Q Is there a study or report, Dr. Clark, which will reveal that information?

A We have had a recent reconnaissance^{of icings}/that will ultimately end up in a report. I believe there are some other references, but not that we have produced, Mr. Scott.

Q Well, I take it what you're telling me is that there isn't a report now.

A No.

Q There may be in the future.

A Yes.

Q Dr. Slusarchuk, what is the explanation for the tilting of the pipe at the Calgary site which is shown, I think, on one of the graphs in your studies? The graph, for the purposes of the record, that is shown as figure 2.48

"Heave profiles along pipe section, October 1974."

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Do you have that? I don't have a page number for it.

3 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: Yes, I
4 have it here, sir.

5 Q It's about the middle of
6 the book, a third of the way through the book.

7 A 244?

8 Q 2.48, I'm sorry.

9 A Well, the reason for the
10 tilting there, sir, is it was heaving faster at one
11 end than at the other end. I might add further that
12 with regard to the control sections, the end there that
13 is not heaving quite as quickly as the other end, you
14 have to bring your ducts into the ground and some of
15 the weight from the ducts was also acting on that end
16 of the -- of the buried pipeline, which would add a
17 little bit of additional stress. The other thing is
18 that there's a little bit of a change in the frost
19 heaving characteristics along the -- of the soil under-
20 neath there, and it is creating that tilting.

21 Q Well, do I understand
22 then that the explanation for the variation in heave
23 that is shown in that chart is that it is one, that
24 each of the pipes at one end were connected to some
25 facility which may have had the effect of weighing them
26 down at that end?

27 A On the control sections,
28 sir, I am referring to specifically there in that --

29 Q Would that be near the
30 zero end of the graph?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

A Yes sir.

Q And is what you're telling
that
us is/there's a pressure because there's a tap or an
input or something?

A We tried to isolate the
load from the ducts onto the soil, but in fact the
pipe -- the duct there was on skids and we didn't
realize it for a while, and then when we did realize
it, we did in fact/^{then}jack it up so that the load was
no longer on there.

Q Well, I put it to you that
without, leaving aside that explanation for the moment,
there is the most extraordinary variation in heave,
bearing in mind that the pipe goes through, as you've
said, relatively homogeneous soil, over nearly 40
feet.

A You're talking about the
control section now, sir? Of that line?

Q I'm talking about at least
three of them. The control, the gravel, and the re-
strained.

A Yes, there is a tilt to
them.

Q Apart from the tap being
on the end, is there any other explanation for that,
what appears to be a marked variation?

A Other than that there are
different frost-heaving characteristics underneath the
pipe, over that length of 40 feet.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q And these different frost-
3 heaving characteristics exist in a soil over 40 feet
4 that is notably homogenous.

5 A It's not homogenous in
6 that sense, there's a tilting to the soil layers in
7 that area and at around -- depending on what section
8 you're talking about, there is a little bit of a differ-
9 ence between the soil that is freezing at one end
10 compared to the other. But it's not tremendously
11 different.

12 Q But the soil is all
13 within one soil classification.

14 A Yes sir, that's correct.

15 Q Yes, and it's not a
16 difference in soil characteristics that could be
17 detected by any of the devices you've described that
18 you're going to utilize in the valley, is it?

19 A Well, we certainly could
20 detect the difference in that soil from ^{our} / frost heave
21 tests in the lab.

22 Q Yes, but when you come
23 to lay the pipe you're not going to be able to tell
24 whether the minor differences in soil classification
25 that led to the tilting at Calgary exist from mile to
26 mile up the valley.

27 A No sir, that's correct.
28 I want to make a point here, though, sir, that though
29 it's tilted it's remarkably straight, and our design
30 criteria is the curvature of the pipe and if you look

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 at

2 / these you would note that there was very little stress
3 induced into the pipe, due to frost heaving.

4 Q Well, those pipes were
5 only 40 feet long, weren't they?

6 A That's right, sir.

7 Q Is the expression,
8 "the stress history of a soil" familiar to you?

9 A Yes sir.

10 Q Can you -- as Mr. Genest
11 would say -- can you tell me what I mean by that?

12 A It's the cycle of
13 loading or unloading that may have been put on the
14 soil, either due to, for example, ^{the} glaciers coming over
15 and retreating, deposition, additional soil being
16 deposited on it or going ^{through} / a freeze and 'thaw cycle.

17 Q Well, could you tell me
18 if I'm correct when I suggest to you that the stress
19 history of the soil is the extent to which the soil
20 has experienced a load, experienced in the past a load
21 higher than its present overburden?

22 A That could be one
23 component of stress history, yes.

24 Q So in layman's terms,
25 when you look to the stress history of the soil, you
26 want to know to what extent there have been pressures
27 on it before that are now not present?

28 A Yes sir, that would be --

29 Q And why is that
30 significant?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

A In most of our work, sir,
we haven't considered it significant. It does have
some implication if you're crossing at river crossings
where the soil is not really dense and has a tendency
to consolidate / ^{upon} freezing.

Q Well now, do you consider
that it's a significant factor, this stress history of
any given piece of soil in approaching this problem?

A We haven't considered
that to this point, sir.

Q Well, I want to read you
one sentence from a paper by Dr. Morgenstern, I presume
he's a doctor -- Arvidsson, called
"Water Flow Induced by Soil Freezing."

MR. GENEST: Just a moment,
but it's
it's a paper by Dr. Morgenstern / by somebody else?

MR. SCOTT: No, it's by him and
--

MR. GENEST: Somebody else?

MR. SCOTT: -- somebody else,
I presume he's a doctor, as everybody but Mr. Williams
seems to be.

A He is not.

Q He's not. W.D. Arvid-
sson at that time with R.M. Hardy & Associates, presen-
ted to the 27th Canadian Geotechnical Conference at
Edmonton in November of 1974, and the abstract of it
reads --

MR. GENEST: Whose abstract?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

MR. SCOTT: The abstract which is attached to the paper which I presume is either prepared by or approved at least by the authors, I don't know how you abstract these things.

MR. GENEST: I'm just trying to distinguish it from yours.

MR. SCOTT: Perhaps I should read it all:

"A method of assessing the freezing behaviour of a soil is developed, This assessment is based on the linear relationship between the flow of water to or away from the freezing front and overburden pressure. The pressure at which no flow occurs is termed the shut-off pressure. At pressures less than the shut-off pressure water is sucked to the freezing front, resulting in ice lensing which can cause excessive heaving. At pressures greater than the shut-off pressure water is expelled from the freezing front, resulting in relatively small amounts of heave due to a freezing of a fraction of the original insight to water."

Stopping there, Dr. Slusarchuk, that's what we've been talking about, isn't it?

A Yes sir.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q Yes, and the last sentence,
2 "This water flow pressure relationship and the shut-
3 off pressure depends on soil type, stress history and
4 freezing temperature". Do you accept that as a general
5 proposition?

6 A With regard to the stress
7 history, we don't have the situation that is directly
8 related there, where they are talking about remoulded
9 samples all the time. We are actually sampling soils
10 from along the test site, and the data that we get,
11 the frost heave data, the rate of heave data, inherent
12 in that data that we are getting and using is the stress
13 history of the soil.

14 Q Well, Dr. Slusarchuk, I may
15 be wrong, but I understood you to say about three
16 minutes ago, that you had given no consideration to
17 the stress history of the soil in doing these tests?
18 Now, is that correct or is it not?

19 A Well perhaps I wasn't full
20 enough in explaining what I meant at that time, sir.

21 WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

22 A Could I have a word here?
23 The shut-off pressure as a phenomenon does depend
24 upon stress history, but by evaluating the shut-off
25 pressure of the soils that we encounter on this
26 pipeline route by undertaking tests similar to those
27 described in the paper that you cited, but on samples
28 extracted from the route itself, the stress history
29 is embraced within the test, and therefore we are
30 testing samples that already reflect the history of

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 loading and unloading that they have been exposed to.
2 In this sense, we no longer have to pay attention to
3 the effects of stress history in the further testing
4 that we do on the soils from the right-of-way.

5 Q Well, Dr. Morgenstern,
6 are you telling us that it's quite consistent with
7 your paper therefore, in the analyses that were done
8 for this pipeline, to ignore the stress history, not-
9 withstanding the abstract?

10 A The stress history -- it is
11 quite consistent to ignore the stress history any
12 further, because we are testing undisturbed samples
13 taken from the route that contain within them, the
14 stress history.

15 Q Okay. Isn't it clear that
16 in an unprecedented project of this type, that you
17 should have an understanding of the stress history?

18 A Consolidation testing on
19 some of these samples to evaluate their stress history
20 does go on, but the actual evaluation --

21 Q Where, where?

22 A Where?

23 MR. GENEST: Let him finish
24 his answer before you ask him where.

25 MR. SCOTT:

26 Q Where does it go on?

27 A It goes on as part of the
28 characterizing of the unfrozen soil. The evaluation
29 of the shut-off pressure itself does not require
30 further testing related to stress history, because it

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 contains the stress history.

2 Q Well -- I'm sorry.

3 A We are testing in our shut-
4 off pressure test, a sample with a stress history that
5 nature has put into it, and these constitute the bases
6 for our further design.

7 Q Well first of all, who is
8 doing the study of the stress history in these soils
9 at the Calgary site?

10 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

11 A We have ran some consolid-
12 ation tests on it, such as Dr. Morgenstern is refer-
13 ring to.

14 Q Well, are they reported on?

15 A I think they are probably
16 reported on in here, sir.

17 We have some parts of the data report,
18 such as the co-efficient of consolidation which is
19 one aspect of that, but we don't have the actual
20 stress history --

21 Q Well who has it?

22 A -- put in here.

23 Q I must say I misunderstood.
24 I understood you to say first that no consideration
25 has been given to this, Dr. Morgenstern has given an
26 explanation that you know, I accept for these pur-
27 poses, and now I understand you to say that some
28 consideration indeed has been givento stress history.

29 A Well, I didn't say we
30 didn't consider them. I said that at the stage we are

1 at, they're not significant to us, and that's what
2 I thought you were asking. We don't work stress
3 history into our predictive tool.

4 Now, as a matter of course with
5 a lot of soil studies that you do, you run consolidat-
6 ion tests and so on, and we didn't incorporate it in
7 this report, but data like that would be available
8 to --

9 Q Are the samples that you
10 are getting from along the route disturbed or not?

11 A They are what we call un-
12 disturbed samples, sir.

13 Q You're satisfied of that in
14 every case?

15 A Well, there's always some
16 disturbance whenever you take a sample.. This is an
17 accepted aspect of sampling anything, and we have
18 sampled in a manner that we feel our samples are un-
19 disturbed from our point of view.

20 Q Well, if the sample is
21 disturbed, it's then that you particularly want to
22 have a stress history? Isn't that so?

23 WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

24 A The procedure for sampling
25 the undisturbed samples are commonly accepted techniques
26 for sampling unfrozen soils. The degree of disturb-
27 ance introduced by these sampling procedures is one
28 that is part of the conventional knowledge of our
29 geotechnical work.

30 Detailed evaluation of stress

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 history, it would seem to me would be of interest, but
2 not essential to the bringing together the body of
3 data for frost heave prediction and design.

4 Q Well does this mean then,
5 that if you can get an undisturbed sample, you don't
6 have to be concerned, or you don't have to consider,
7 as I think Dr. Slusarchuk put it, the stress history
8 of that particular sample?

9 A Yes.

10 If you had a sample that was
11 very disturbed, and you could see it, you wouldn't use
12 that, you wouldn't test it.

13 Q Well, are you satisfied
14 to the point of assurance that the samples that you
15 have obtained from the valley and taken to wherever
16 you take them to test, can be regarded as undisturbed
17 samples?

18 A To the usual degree of
19 satisfaction in our work, yes.

20 Q Dr. Slusarchuk, what signi-
21 ficance, if any, do you attach to the development of
22 these long cracks that have been seen on the surface,
23 that appear to be from frost heaving at the Calgary
24 site?

25 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

26 A That is just a shear plane,
27 sir, due to the frozen soil moving up.

28 Q And what length are they?

29 A They are pretty much the
30 length of the pipe.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Mogenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q Yes, and no doubt they will
2 run along the pipe in the 200 mile sector that is
3 alternately frozen and unfrozen?

4 A Yes, sir.

5 Q Yes. Are these good or bad
6 or indifferent? What evaluation do you make of them?

7 A With regard to our frost
8 heave analysis, I think they are indifferent.

9 Q Well, aren't they going to
10 be a repository for run-offs?

11 A Well that's a different
12 thing than frost heaving, sir.

13 Q Yes. But is there anybody
14 on the panel who can speak to the question of what the
15 consequences will be if they indeed are a repository
16 for run-off along the 200 mile length of this pipe?

17 WITNESS CLARK:

18 A The water within the zone of
19 influence of the pipe would freeze, and therefore the
20 cracks would not conduct water beyond that frozen
21 section.

22 Q Well now --

23 THE COMMISSONER: Excuse me.
24 Did you say that the water would freeze?

25 A If the crack extended into
26 the zone affected by the pipe, this frozen soil, the
27 water would freeze in that frozen soil. I'm not sure
28 in hindsight, if I've understood Mr. Scott's question.

29 Q Well that would block the
30 flow downward at any rate.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 A Yes.

2 Q Is that your point?

3 A Yes.

4 MR. SCOTT:

5 Q Is there any doubt about
6 the question, Dr. Clark?

7 A Yes, that was the -- if I
8 interpreted it correctly. You might have been refer-
9 ring to flow along the pipeline.

10 Q Well these cracks run along
11 the pipeline?

12 A Yes, they do.

13 Q Along the edge of the pipe-
14 line?

15 A Yes.

16 Q Virtually its length, at
17 least where there is any heave.

18 A Yes.

19 Q Did you understand that when
20 you made your answer?

21 A Yes.

22 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, excuse
23 me, the cracks would be parallel to the pipeline?

24 A They would, indeed, yes.

25 MR. SCOTT:

26 Q Well now, Dr. Slusarchuk,
27 have you given any consideration to heaving from ice
28 lensing of the soils above the pipeline?

29 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

30 A Yes, sir, some.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q Well now, I ask you to en-
2 visage a situation in which the pipeline as a result
3 of the remedies you have discussed, does not move.
4 What is the extent of heaving that can be anticipated
5 above the line, that is, above the pipe in the soils
6 that are found there?

7 A It would tend to heave a
8 certain amount, and as the pipeline started to operate
9 and the frozen zone would develop over it, in the
10 summer it would thaw back down and then it would more
11 or less establish an equilibrium there, sir. It
12 wouldn't be kind of an ongoing process, the way you
13 have it beneath the pipe, because it would be more
14 similar to the frost heaving situation that we
15 are used to in the more southern latitudes.

16 Q Well, over what period of
17 time is this heaving above the pipe likely to occur?

18 A Well during the first few
19 months of operation.

20 Q Well, why is it that it
21 won't occur indefinitely? There is no overburden
22 to speak of?

23 A No, because the sun comes
24 out in the summer and thaws down to it.

25 Q So I take it what is going
26 to happen is the thaw is going to terminate the
27 lensing annually?

28 A Yes, sir.

29 Q Yes. Well now, what ranges
30 of heave do you contemplate under worst conditions

Clark, Hollingshead, McRobets,
Slusarchuk, Mogenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 above the pipeline?

2 A Between the top of the
3 pipe and the top of the ground, we contemplate very
4 little heave, or a nominal amount of heave. A few
5 inches or something like that.

6 Q Well let's take -- have you
7 done studies on this?

8 A Well, we've done studies to
9 the extent that we've done geothermal analysis on
10 different situations --

11 Q Well that tells us the
12 temperature, doesn't it?

13 A It tells you what's frozen
14 and what isn't frozen.

15 Q All right, but what I'm
16 asking is, have you done studies to measure -- have
17 you done studies, assuming the pipe is perfectly
18 stationary, on the extent of heave that occurs in
19 the ground above it?

20 A We haven't done specific
21 studies on that, sir.

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Now I presume you had
3 the opportunity to measure this at Calgary.

4 A Yes.

5 Q Did you measure it?

6 A Yes sir.

7 Q Is that reported anywhere?

8 A Yes, it should be reported
9 in this here document.

10 Q Is there any chance that
11 you can put me onto the page or the graph?

12 A Yes, just give me a
13 second. It's reported as a separate study, sir, and
14 the data is in here but you would have to -- we don't
15 have it in here as a separate graph, and I'm not sure
16 whether the data is actually presented in here from
17 all the heave data. We could actually go and make a
18 quick calculation right here to show you that. We do
19 have that data.

20 Q well, I take it that
21 you're not primarily concerned with it because it
22 doesn't have to do with the movement of the pipe.

23 A We are also monitoring
24 the ground surface. That is reported in here on figures
25 237, so we know what the pipe's moving and we know
26 what the ground surface is moving across the pipe.

27 Q Well, I'm concerned with
28 heave above the pipe that is related only to the lensing
29 in the ground above the pipe, and perhaps you can,
30 at a convenient opportunity, get those figures for

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Mr. Genest and let us have them, based on your
3 observations at Calgary.

4 A Yes sir, I could do that.

5 Q Yes, not in the next
6 ten minutes, but when you have a convenient moment.

7 Now I take it that --

8 MR. GENEST: Mr. Scott, I
9 just want to make sure of what we're required to do
10 so there will be no quarrels about it.

11 MR. SCOTT: Well, let us have
12 a report of the measurements at the Calgary test-site
13 which reflect heaving above the pipe, that is lensing
14 and the consequent lift above the pipe.

15 MR. GENEST: Heaving that is
16 lensing above the pipe.'

17 MR. SCOTT: Q Now, Dr. Slusar-
18 chuk, I take it that that lensing will occur not
19 only on top of the pipe but on the sides of the pipe
20 as well

21 A Yes sir.

22 Q Have you done any
23 measurements or do you have the statistics which will
24 -- or the readings which will tell us the lift associa-
25 ted with lensing in those areas?

26 A I think we have the
27 information that we could provide that.

28 Q Thank you very much.

29 A And you want the heaving
30 to the sides, but that is physically located in elevation

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 over top of the centre line of the pipe. Over top of
3 the pipe, like over the pipe there's no question, we
4 just talk about the pipe to the ground surface; but
5 now at the side it starts to go all the way around
6 and underneath the pipe, and all you're interested in
7 is the heave of the ground that's to the side?

8 Q Above the natural ground
9 level. Have I made myself clear?

10 A No sir.

11 Q Well maybe I don't
12 understand. I'm sorry, the heave to the edges of the
13 frost bulb on each side.

14 MR. GENEST: The heave on each
15 side, I just don't follow that.

16 MR. SCOTT: Well, I think the
17 transcript tomorrow, Mr. Genest, I'm sure it's not going
18 to be --

19 MR. GENEST: Well, I understood
20 clearly what you said, and I know the English words
21 that you used, but what you mean escapes me entirely.
22 Heaving to the side is a concept that escapes my
23 limited brain. Perhaps my panel will know.

24 MR. SCOTT: I'm surprised to
25 hear that.

26 (LAUGHTER)

27 MR. GENEST: You've known my
28 brain a long time, Mr. Scott. So if my panel later
29 tells me that that's incomprehensible to them, I'd just
30 like some explanation of what it is we're getting at.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 MR. SCOTT: Dr. Slusarchuk,,
3 do you have some comprehension of what I was talking
4 about?

5 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: Well, I
6 am not clear on what you're after when you start talking
7 about over the side of the pipe. There's only a
8 certain amount of soil between the top of the pipe
9 and the ground surface right above the pipe, and
10 that I'm quite clear on what you're after; but when you
11 start to go over the sides, do you want me to give you
12 the heave of that soil that is in elevation above the
13 top of the pipe, is that what you're after?

14 MR. GENEST: ARE you having
15 the same trouble, Mr. Scott?

16 MR. SCOTT: I'm getting a
17 diagram.

18 A Perhaps I --

19 Q Well, is it possible to
20 prepare for us perhaps in a diagramatic way the
21 -- a line showing the heave from the outside line of
22 the frost bulb on one side across the mound and over
23 to the outside limit of the frost bulb on the other?

24 A You already have that,
25 sir, on figure 237. For example, for the control
26 section, maybe I can just carry that on. The ground
27 directly over the pipe -- and this would be the ground
28 between the pipe and six inches over the pipe, I
29 believe that's where that -- or six inches between
30 the normal ground surface there, if it heaved in 200

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 days, are you on figure 237, sir?

3 Q Yes.

4 A It has heaved somewheres
5 about say .8 feet. The pipe at the same time, if you
6 go to figure 256, has also heaved approximately .8
7 feet at 200 days, so you can see that they are virtually
8 heaving at the same rate.

9 Q It's difficult to follow
10 that with not all of us looking at the diagrams.
11 Would it be too much to ask that you prepare a summary
12 of your measurements at Calgary as best you can?

13 A Well --

14 MR. GENEST: Showing what,
15 Mr. Commissioner? I want to be helpful to Mr. Scott.

16 MR. SCOTT: Showing the
17 extent to which above the stationary pipe or above the
18 top of the pipe heaving has occurred as a result of --
19 heaving has occurred.

20 A Well, sir, is not my
21 answer now which I thought I couldn't dig out of our
22 figures not sufficient for you? Perhaps if you'd care
23 to look at the figures I could give you the answer
24 that shows you that the pipe is heaving at the same
25 rate as the ground above it, and therefore the heaving
26 that is taking place over top of the pipe is virtually
27 nil. Looking at the control section, it would be
28 figure 237.

29 Q Well, the difficulty is
30 that if we all followed it in our charts, it may be

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

possible for us to interpret the charts. I wonder if as a matter of convenience it isn't possible to tell us what those measurements are, as you've been able to do in other cases? The diagram is made more difficult to understand by virtue of the tilt to the pipe.

A Well, in both cases we've been plotting the heave at the centre line of the pipe and that's what's given on figure 256, and the heave that is given of the ground surface is also at the centre of the pipe.

Q All right, what is the dimension of heave that is attributable merely to the earth above the pipe at Calgary?

A It's very small, sir.

Q Well, can you tell us what it is? The maximum you observed.

A For the control section, sir?

Q For any section, or for all of them, that's really what we want.

A O.K., well then I can't -- I can only give you the control section right now. I'll give you the others later.

Q I'd be obliged, thank you very much. I take it that that answer, Dr. Slusarchuk, will be for one year?

A Well, it will take me a couple more days, I don't have the data with me beyond day 200, but I can give it to you for one year if thats

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 what you're after.

3 Q Thank you.

4 MR. GENEST: You won't settle
5 for 200 days?

6 MR. SCOTT: Well, I'll settle
7 for what you have, what you have conveniently. The
8 problem, Mr. Commissioner, as Mr. Genest knows, is that
9 studies have been prepared to reflect the movement of
10 the pipe. It's our proposition that there may be some
11 movement that is unconnected with the pipe except by
12 virtue of the fact that the pipe has created a frost
13 bulb. In terms of environmental concerns we may be
14 interested to know the extent to which that exists.

15 A You're not correct to
16 say, sir, that tests were designed to monitor the heave
17 of the pipe, because in each cross-section we have
18 approximately 25 heave gauges that are monitoring the
19 heave of the soil at different depths and different
20 distances away from the pipe, and we only have three
21 heave gauges monitoring the movement of the pipe on
22 each section.

23 Q I don't want to argue
24 but what I'm saying is however the test was designed,
25 the study that is produced shows us the heave of the
26 pipe, it doesn't deal with the heave above the pipe,
27 assuming a stationary pipe. Now I understand that you'll
28 be able to get that for us and I'm grateful, on a
29 200-day basis.

30 THE COMMISSIONER: I think I

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 understand what this argument has been about. You have
3 been measuring the heave, the extent to which the pipe
4 itself will heave and what Mr. Scott is after is the
5 extent of the heave on the surface of the earth.

6 A Yes sir, and we've got
7 that, and we've got those figures in here.

8 Q At 200 days?

9 A Yes, at 100, 150 and 200
10 days.

11 THE COMMISSIONER:
12 Well, at least you know
13 what you're arguing about, and I think that's important.

14 MR. SCOTT: It's encouraging.

15 Q Dr. Clark, let me ask
16 you a couple of questions about the remedial measures
17 that you propose for the movement of drainage water,
18 and the first relates to your solution which is a berm
19 break for surface drainage/ water. Now, I take it that a
20 berm break is really a cut in the overburden. May I
21 begin again? A berm break is not necessary, except in
22 a case where there is an overburden.

23 WITNESS CLARK: A berm
24 break would be used where there is a spoil mound or
25 a berm to inhibit frost heave in frost susceptible
26 soil.

27 Q And the break, I take it,
28 is simply a physical cut of some width in the berm or
29 overburden.

30 A The ground would not be
built up over the original level of the drainage course

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

there.

Q So that what happens is
that you stop your overburden for a period of time
and that becomes the berm break.

A That's correct.

Q And the berm break is
in fact the -- the base of the berm break is in fact
the original ground level.

A That's correct.

1 Q Now, what happens when the
2 -- when frost heave occurs, and the ground all along
3 the pipeline is raised at the centre?

4 WITNESS CLARK:

5 A That would depend upon the
6 nature and frequency of our berm break, but that
7 ground would come up there.

8 Now, if the berm break was in
9 a soil where the -- it could erode, it would downcut
10 by itself, but our proposal there would be by mainten-
11 ance to keep that bottom of the berm break at that
12 level, --

13 Q Well --

14 A -- so it could drain water.

15 Q -- let's see if I understand
16 the question.

17 MR. GENEST: Mr. Scott, please
18 let the witness finish his answer.

19 MR. SCOTT: I'm sorry.

20
21 MR. COMMISSIONER: I think we
22 might break for a cup of coffee and then take another
23 run at this in a few minutes. Would that be all right,
24 and I think we're in need of some kind of break.

25
26 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED)

27
28 (PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam.

1 CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. SCOTT, CONTINUED:

2
3 Q Dr. Clark, to revert to the
4 problem I was trying to deal with before, let me give
5 you these assumptions. You have, as I think you have
6 told us, the berm break at ground level. You have
7 frost heave, elevating the pipe, the ground above
8 the pipe, let us say a foot; how are you going to
9 clear that berm break so the water won't have to go
10 over a hump that is one foot high?

11 A That particular section
12 which would be frozen in the winter, would thaw in the
13 summer, so it would be less than the ground that
14 remained frozen under the berm, for instance.

15 It would then settle a certain
16 amount, it might still be above the level that it
17 started out at. There would probably be some erosion
18 there, and occasionally on the maintenance schedule
19 it would be required to lower that physically.

20 Q Well Dr. Clark, the berm
21 break raised a foot that we are talking about --

22 A Yes.

23 Q -- is not going to melt
24 during the spring run-off, is it?

25 A It would start to melt as
26 soon as water got to it.

27 Q Yes, but there would be lots
28 of water going over there, or wanting to go over
29 there before the ground is thawed a depth of a foot?

30 A I would think that with

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 running water that the thawing to a foot would occur
2 very rapidly.

3 Q Well, I suggest to you
4 that this is a problem that can only be solved by
5 virtually annual maintenance of the berm breaks?

6 A We would see for about the
7 first three to five years, maintenance there.

8 Q And that would mean going
9 in and cutting them out? Doesn't it?

10 A It would mean going in
11 with a -- I would visualize a couple of people with
12 a shovel to open up the area again.

13 Q Yes.

14 A A hand shovel, not a mech-
15 anical one.

16 Q Well now, the next matter
17 is drainage through the Templeton Wall.

18 A Yes, sir.

19 Q As I understand there, you
20 are going to put a tube of some description from one
21 end of the -- or from beyond one extremity of the
22 frost bulb through the frost bulb out the other end?

23 A When Mr. Templeton was
24 discussing that, I mentioned that we had not yet
25 identified any area where that would be required.
26 We saw that as a solution if there was a shallow
27 aquifer that carried water through the winter.

28 Q Am I correct that you said
29 to Mr. Templeton that if there was -- let me put it
30 this way. Mr. Templeton's proposition to you, I think

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 was that the water as it passed through the frozen
2 bulb, would freeze and block the bulb? That was what
3 --

4 A That is what he suggested,
5 yes.

6 Q Yes, and I understand your
7 answer to that to be that if the water is flowing
8 quickly, it won't freeze?

9 A I couldn't give you precise
10 but
11 numbers, /for the six inch diameter pipe, for example,
12 with only one inch of insulation around it, the cal-
13 culations would indicate that the flow required would
14 be about one thousandths of a cubic foot per second,
15 to keep it from freezing, a very small flow.

16 Q Well, wasn't your answer
17 to Mr. Templeton, that in the event that there was a
18 very small flow, you would not feel it necessary to
19 run the lines through the bulb?

20 A If the flow was insignifi-
21 cant.

22 Q If the flow was relatively
23 large, however, you would, and in your judgment it
24 would not freeze within the bulb and block the pipe?

25 A That's correct, yes.

26 Q Well let me put this situat-
27 ion to you. It seems to me there is an intermediate
28 case, a case of a flow that is great at one season of
29 the year, but which begins to trickle and may ultimately
30 dry up. Now what is going to be done there?

A Well, if it's great at one

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 season, I would assume that you mean the summer season
2 --

3 Q Yes.

4 A -- under that circumstance,
5 we wouldn't propose to carry the water through the
6 pipe. We would carry it through the berm breaks, in
7 other words, let it surface, and it would then be
8 carried through the berm breaks.

9 Q Well isn't there inherent
10 in this, the risk that if there is any volume of
11 water, you will collect great pools of water on the
12 upside of the pipe?

13 A It would depend on the
14 slope entirely, the size of the pool. There could
15 be minor pools, but not what I would describe as
16 a great pool.

17 Q In any event, that is the
18 solution that is proposed for cases where there is
19 a flow that -- a substantial flow that diminishes in
20 another season?

21 A That's correct.

22 Q Is there any prospect that
23 when that happens, an icing will be created that will
24 last through the season ?

25 A Well the substantial
26 flow is occurring in the summer, as I understand the
27 scene that you set, so there would be no icing there.
28 For an icing to occur, there would have to be sub-
29 stantial flow in the winter, in which case we would
30 be carrying it through the frozen bulb.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1

2

Q What about the autumn?

3

A You would like to extend the

4

substantial flow into the autumn?

5

Q Yes.

6

A If there is substantial

7

flow, it would still come to the surface in the autumn,

8

I would think.

9

Q Well, will an icing not

10

form?

11

A I'm not sure that it

12

would. The combination of circumstances required to

13

form an icing.

14

Q Would you agree with me

15

that this solution needs a lot of attention?

16

A I think that the particular

17

areas need a lot of attention, but we are talking

18

about an area where we placed the berm to inhibit

19

frost heave. We are also talking about sloping ground

20

because for there to be flow the ground has to slope,

21

and I would suggest that the amount of sloping ground

22

in unfrozen soil where we might be required to use

23

this particular configuration, is less than half of 1%

24

of the length of the line in the discontinuous zone.

25

Q Well, is that --

26

A So substantial attention

27

has to be given to those specific locations, but it's

28

in total, not a very great length of line. So it's not

29

substantial in quantity.

30

Q Have any studies or any

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 work been done about, or any testing done of these
3 remedies, or is it again a conceptual response to a
4 problem.

5 A Well, we haven't tested
6 this in the field, no.

7 Q Have you tested it anywhere?

8 A We have analyzed the
9 scope of the problem, I think, to bring it into
10 perspective. We have developed what we feel at this
11 time are solutions to the problem. We have subjected
12 those to analysis and have -- feel that they will work.

13 Q Well, does that mean
14 frankly that you've analyzed it and you've sat around
15 and talked about ^{it} and you think this is the way it's
16 going to be done?

17 A If I understand you,
18 you're asking if we have carried water through a
19 frozen bulb in discontinuous permafrost areas, and
20 there has just been no opportunity to do that.

21 Q Well, this wasn't
22 tested at Calgary.

23 A It couldn't be tested
24 at that test site.

25 Q Why not?

26 A Well, there just isn't
27 sloping ground there, the permeability of the soil is
28 very low.

29 Q And you didn't consider
30 it desirable to simulate one?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A It wasn't part of our
3 objective.

4 Q Well, the Assessment
5 Group raised it, the question of frost heaving above
6 the chilled pipe, and Mr. Genest in the canned evidence
7 at page -- at the addendum, page 3, sets out the
8 concern and the response --

9 MR. GENEST: It's not my
10 evidence, Mr. Scott. It's the panel's.

11 MR. SCOTT: There's some
12 disadvantage in afternoon sessions.

13 Q I don't want to go through
14 it again, Dr. Clark, but I take it that the defence is
15 that the -- any heaving that will result is going to
16 be minimal, for the reasons that are fully set out on
17 pages 3 and 4.

18 A We're dealing here with
19 frost heaving, as I read the page concerned, and
20 I'll read it again to make sure we're looking at the
21 same thing.

22 "Frost heaving around pipe buried in permafrost
23 PAAG states, page 170, that although the rate
24 of water migration in frozen soil is low, it
25 could produce significant heave over the long
26 operating life of the pipe."

27 So that we're talking about not the discontinuous
28 permafrost zone now, but the frost heave that could
29 occur in continuous permafrost, is that correct?

30 Q Yes, and the nature of

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 the problem, as I understand it, is a situation in
3 which you have the chilled pipe at a lower temperature
4 than the frozen soil above it.

5 A Yes.

6 Q Well now, you have
7 listed -- and I won't ask you to go through it again
8 because you've done it in detail -- your judgment and
9 the reasons for it in support of the proposition that
10 the heaving that results will be very modest.

11 A Yes, that's correct.

12 Q Well now, and I understand
13 that, is there someone on the panel who can compare the
14 process to which that concern relates with the process
15 of frost heaving in unfrozen soil that we have been
16 discussing this morning? Leave aside the dimensions
17 of the problem. Is the process the same?

18 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: The
19 frost heaving in frozen soil or in the permafrost,
20 the driving gradients are the thing that moves the
21 water from point A to point B to cause an ice lens,
22 for example, is a thermo-gradient, and the --

23 THE COMMISSIONER: The water
24 moves toward the --

25 A From the warmer part
26 of the permafrost still frozen, to a colder part of
27 the permafrost.

28 Q Yes.

29 A And one of the reasons
30 that this does move is according to a law that is given

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper.
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 the name of
2 /of Gibbs free energy.

3 (LAUGHTER)

4 MR. SCOTT: I'm familiar with
5 that law, Dr. Slusarchuk.
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 MR. GENEST: We know it isn't
2 free.

3 MR. SCOTT:

4 Q You are playing to the
5 gallery, Dr. Slusarchuk, now answer the question.

6 A No sir, that is the
7 terminology that it's known by, and the -- at differ-
8 ent temperatures, the ice in the water, the water that
9 is unfrozen in the permafrost, is at a different state
10 of energy than a point some place distant that's at a
11 different temperature, and it's this temperature
12 difference that wants to drive the water from one
13 place to the next place, and so that's the mechanism
14 by which the water is tending to move in the frozen
15 -- in the frozen soil.

16 Q Could I interrupt you?
17 Do I understand that to be a different mechanism
18 than the mechanism that operates to create heaving in
19 unfrozen soil?

20 A It's a different mechanism
21 operating in the moving water in the frozen soil, than
22 is operating in the unfrozen soil bringing the water
23 from the unfrozen soil to the frost front.

24 Q In the frost heave situation
25 that we've been discussing this morning?

26 A Yes, sir.

27 Q Are there other differences
28 in the two models, the frozen ground model and the
29 unfrozen ground model?

30 A Well the -- I'm not that

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Mogenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 -- I'm really not that terribly familiar with any of
2 the other differences that might exist; . that to
3 me seems to be the major difference, other than that
4 pressure seems to affect the mound of water that is
5 moving in the unfrozen soil, whereas the people that
6 are doing physical research in the frozen soil haven't
7 come up or been talking about that sort of thing that
8 I'm familiar with.

9 Q Your dilemma seems to be
10 the same as those -- as that affecting those who
11 advise me. Are you aware, and this is the purpose
12 of the question, are you aware of any report or study
13 or monograph or paper that deals with this phenomena?

14 A Which one are you talking
15 about now, sir?

16 Q The question of the develop-
17 ment of the process in frozen soil?

18 A Yes, sir, there are a lot
19 of papers on that.

20 Q Where do we find them?

21 A I can give you several tens
22 of them, if that's what you're after.

23 Q Well I would be grateful
24 for that, but have you done -- has Northern Engineering
25 done any work on this phenomena that's available?

26 A Yes, we've had a close
27 look at that, yes sir.

28 Q Is there any report or
29 study within the possession of Northern Engineering
30 that touches it?

1 A We have done the study , sir,
2 we have not -- we do not have a report in even draught
3 shape yet, but we have been doing a study on that over
4 the past few months.

5 MR. SCOTT: Well, Mr. Commiss-
6 ioner, perhaps I can leave that subject in that way,
7 and invite Mr. Genest to consult with me to determine
8 how best the information that may be in that putative
9 paper can be made available to us and we don't have
10 to trouble you and take your time on that subject.

11 Mr. Commissioner, those were
12 the questions that I anticipated I would have asked
13 and finished by one o'clock.

14 MR. COMMISSIONER: Well, if
15 you're suggesting we adjourn now until tomorrow
16 morning, I think I'll go along with that before any-
17 body has a chance to protest, so we will adjourn till
18 9 in the morning then .

19
20 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED TO 9:00 A.M., THURSDAY,
21 APRIL 10TH, 1975)
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

347
M835
Vol. XXVI

Mackenzie Valley pipeline inquiry:
Vol. XXVI 9 April 1975

347
M835
Vol. XXVI

3 1761 11469196 7

